

**SWAT MODELING OF SEDIMENT, NUTRIENTS AND PESTICIDES  
IN THE LE-SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED, SOUTH-CENTRAL MINNESOTA**

A DISSERTATION  
SUBMITTED TO THE FACULTY OF THE GRADUATE SCHOOL  
OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA  
BY

SOLOMON MULETA FOLLE

IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS  
FOR THE DEGREE OF  
DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

January 2010

© Solomon Muleta Folle 2010

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I owe thanks to many people whose assistance was indispensable from the inception of my life in grad school to this point of completing my research. First, I thank my advisor Dr. David J. Mulla for accepting me as his student, for his wonderful guidance, endless freedom on my work, thoroughness and promptness in reviewing my work. Without his patience, constructive comments and feedback, it would have been impossible to handle a research work of this kind. I would also like to extend my sincere thanks to my committee members Dr. William Koskinen, Dr. Gary Sands, Dr. Pam Rice, Dr. Bruce Willson and Dr. Adam Birr, for their participation in my dissertation committee and their valued feedbacks.

Great thanks goes to the Minnesota Department of Agriculture for financially supporting this research. In particular, I would like to thank Dr. Joseph Zachmann, Ron Struss, Dr. Khalil Ahmad, VanRyswyk Bill, Scott Matteson, Pat Baskfield, Heidi Peterson, Joel Nelson, David Ruschy, Dr. Srinivasan, R., and Dr. Manoj Jha for their technical support, data provision and enriching ideas on my study.

Many friends have helped me stay sane during my stay at grad school. I greatly value their friendship and I deeply appreciate their belief in me. Debela Dinka, Teshome Negussie, Afework Hailu, Mulugeta W/Tsadik (In Ethiopia); Brent Dalzell, Jose Hernandez, Jake Galzki, Silvano Abreu and Sandera, Burka Edie, Bulla Atomssa, Zerihun Oda, Bizuwork Zewde, Menbere Kidanu, Brian Ashman, Fredda Scobey, Mesfin Tesfaye, Bullo, Atlawu Michael and his wife Aster here in USA.

I am also grateful to my mom Aregash Konde and my late father Muleta Folle, whom I owe everything I am today. Emama and Aba, I will never forget the love, motivation and encouragement you gave me.

Finally, I would like to say special thanks to my wife Askale Z. Chibssa and my two kids Deedee and Hemen. I am deeply indebted to the sacrifices you three paid. None of this would have been possible without your love and patience.

## **DEDICATION**

This dissertation is dedicated to my wife, Askale Z. Chibssa,  
and  
to our children Edom (Deedee) and Hemen.

## **ABSTRACT**

The Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW) of South-Central Minnesota drains 2,850 km<sup>2</sup> in the Minnesota River Basin. The watershed has an annual discharge of 230 mm and generates significant sediment and chemical pollution. The objective of this study was to quantify the spatial and temporal patterns of sediment, nutrient (nitrate-nitrogen, phosphorus) and pesticide (atrazine, acetochlor and metolachlor) losses from the LRW using the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) model. The SWAT model was calibrated and validated from 2000-2006 in the Beauford sub-watershed. The calibrated model was applied to the entire LRW mainly to identify critical pollutant contributing areas and to evaluate effectiveness of alternative best management practices to reduce the loadings. The study has five major parts. The first part deals with hydrologic simulation. The second part identifies the relative contribution of upland and channel sediment sources. The third part deals with water quality impacts of land use and management alternatives on phosphorus and nitrogen losses to the LRW. The fourth part deals with pesticide losses. The fifth part deals with impacts of various biofuel production options on water quality. The LRW has estimated annual loadings of 1.0 kg TP/ha, 18 kg NO<sub>3</sub>-N/ha and 302,000 t/yr of sediment that contribute to water quality impairments in Lake Pepin and the Mississippi River. Alternative management practices are predicted to reduce upland sediment yield by up to 54%, nitrate-N losses by 22%, and phosphorus loadings by 64%. Overall, the SWAT model was able to accurately simulate the hydrology and transport of chemical pollutants under the land use systems, climate, hydrologic and physiographic settings of South-Central Minnesota.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</b> .....	<b>i</b>
<b>ABSTRACT</b> .....	<b>iii</b>
<b>LIST OF TABLES</b> .....	<b>viii</b>
<b>LIST OF FIGURES</b> .....	<b>x</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1 : GENERAL INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED</b>	
<b>HYDROLOGY</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>SYNOPSIS</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>2.1. INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>5</b>
2.1.1. Historical Overview of Watershed Models .....	5
2.1.2. The Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) Model .....	6
2.1.3. Groundwater Flow/ Baseflow Hydrology .....	11
2.1.4. Snowmelt Hydrology.....	12
2.1.5. Surface Runoff Hydrology and Critical Contributing Areas (CCAs) .....	13
<b>2.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS</b> .....	<b>15</b>
2.2.1. The Study Area.....	15
2.2.2. Model Setup and Input Data Acquisition .....	19
2.2.3. Modeling Assumptions.....	23
2.2.4. Identifying Critical Contributing Areas.....	24
2.2.5. Baseflow Separation.....	28
2.2.6. Model Sensitivity Analysis, Calibration and Validation .....	29
<b>2.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION</b> .....	<b>31</b>
2.3.1. Identifying Critical Contributing Areas (CCAs) .....	31
2.3.2. Modeling LRW Hydrology .....	33
<b>2.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS</b> .....	<b>49</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED</b>	
<b>SEDIMENT SOURCE AREAS AND TRANSPORT PROCESSES</b>	
.....	<b>50</b>
<b>SYNOPSIS</b> .....	<b>51</b>
<b>3.1. INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>52</b>
3.1.1. Problem Statement.....	52
3.1.2. Objectives .....	53

3.1.3.	Soil Erosion and Sedimentation Processes .....	53
3.1.4.	Models of Soil Erosion and Sediment Transport .....	56
3.1.5.	Soil Erosion and Sediment Transport in SWAT model .....	59
<b>3.2.</b>	<b>MATERIALS AND METHODS.....</b>	<b>62</b>
3.2.1.	Description of the Study Area .....	62
3.2.2.	Data Collection and Analysis .....	63
3.2.3.	Sensitivity Analysis, Calibration and Validation .....	63
3.2.4.	Representation of Erosion and Sediment Control BMPs .....	66
<b>3.3.</b>	<b>RESULTS AND DISCUSSION.....</b>	<b>69</b>
3.3.1.	Sediment Input Parameters .....	69
3.3.2.	Sensitivity Analysis .....	69
3.3.3.	Calibration and Validation of Sediment .....	70
3.3.4.	Temporal and Spatial Distribution of LRW Sediment Yields.....	74
3.3.5.	Sediment BMPs .....	81
<b>3.4.</b>	<b>SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.....</b>	<b>85</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED</b>		
	<b>PHOSPHORUS DYNAMICS .....</b>	<b>86</b>
	<b>SYNOPSIS.....</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>4.1.</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>88</b>
4.1.1.	Problem Statement.....	89
4.1.2.	Objectives .....	90
4.1.3.	Models of Phosphorus Transport and Fate .....	91
4.1.4.	Phosphorus Simulation Processes in SWAT Model .....	93
<b>4.2.</b>	<b>MATERIALS AND METHODS.....</b>	<b>94</b>
4.2.1.	The Study Area.....	94
4.2.2.	Data Collection and Analysis .....	94
4.2.3.	Selection of Phosphorus BMPs .....	97
<b>4.3.</b>	<b>RESULTS AND DISCUSSION.....</b>	<b>98</b>
4.3.1.	Sensitivity Analysis .....	98
4.3.2.	Calibration and Validation of Phosphorus .....	99
4.3.3.	Phosphorus Yield and Source Areas .....	103
4.3.4.	Phosphorus Budget.....	106
4.3.5.	Phosphorus BMPs .....	107
<b>4.4.</b>	<b>SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.....</b>	<b>110</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED</b>		
	<b>NITROGEN DYNAMICS.....</b>	<b>111</b>

<b>SYNOPSIS.....</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>5.1. INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>113</b>
5.1.1. Problem Statement.....	114
5.1.2. Objectives .....	115
5.1.3. Models of Nitrogen Dynamics .....	116
5.1.4. Nitrogen Simulation Processes in SWAT Model.....	117
<b>5.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS.....</b>	<b>118</b>
5.2.1. Study Area .....	118
5.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis .....	118
<b>5.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION.....</b>	<b>125</b>
5.3.1. Sensitivity Analysis of Nitrogen Parameters.....	125
5.3.2. Calibration and Validation of Nitrogen .....	127
5.3.3. Impacts of Hydrology on Nitrate-N Flux .....	129
<b>5.3.4. Nitrogen Budget.....</b>	<b>131</b>
5.3.5. Spatial and Temporal Distribution of Nitrate-N Losses .....	132
5.3.6. Nitrate-N BMPs.....	135
<b>5.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.....</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6 : SWAT MODELING OF LRW PESTICIDE DYNAMICS .....</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>SYNOPSIS.....</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>6.1. Introduction .....</b>	<b>141</b>
6.1.1. Problem Statement.....	142
6.1.2. Objectives .....	143
6.1.3. Models of Pesticide Dynamics .....	143
6.1.4. Pesticide Simulation Processes in SWAT Model.....	144
<b>6.2. Materials and Methods .....</b>	<b>146</b>
6.2.1. Study Area .....	146
6.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis .....	146
<b>6.3. Results and Discussion .....</b>	<b>149</b>
<b>6.3.1. Calibration and Validation.....</b>	<b>149</b>
6.3.2. LRW Estimated Pesticide Losses .....	151
6.3.2.1. Acetochlor .....	151
6.3.2.2. Atrazine .....	152
6.3.2.3. Metolachlor.....	153
6.3.3. Acetochlor Best Management Practices (BMPs) .....	154
<b>6.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.....</b>	<b>160</b>

<b>CHAPTER 7 : SWAT MODELING OF SURFACE WATER QUALITY</b>	
<b>IMPACTS OF ALTERNATIVE BIOFUEL CROPS AND CROP</b>	
<b>RESIDUE REMOVAL.....</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>SYNOPSIS.....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>7.1. INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>163</b>
7.1.1. Problem Statement.....	165
7.1.2. Objectives .....	165
7.1.3. Models of Crop Growth.....	166
<b>7.2. MATERILAS AND METHODS.....</b>	<b>167</b>
7.2.1. Study Area .....	167
7.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis .....	167
7.2.2.1. Crop Growth Simulation Processes in SWAT Model.....	169
<b>7.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSION .....</b>	<b>172</b>
7.3.1. Baseline Crop Production Scenario.....	172
7.3.2. Water Quality Impacts of Shifting from a Corn-Soybean to a Corn-Corn- Soybean Rotation.....	179
7.3.3. Water Quality Impacts of Planting Switchgrass.....	182
7.3.4. Water Quality Impacts of Corn Residue Removal for Cellulosic Ethanol Production.....	183
<b>7.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS.....</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8 : GENERAL CONCLUSIONS .....</b>	<b>188</b>
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY.....</b>	<b>190</b>

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 2-1: Soil types in the Le Sueur watershed.....	18
Table 2-2: Distribution of slope steepness in the Le Sueur watershed.....	18
Table 2-3: Data sources for the Le Sueur watershed SWAT modeling .....	20
Table 2-4: LRW monitoring stations.....	22
Table 2-5: LRW land use .....	22
Table 2-6: SWAT model parameters for the sensitivity analysis.....	30
Table 2-7: CCA soils in the Beauford sub-watershed.....	31
Table 2-8: CCA soils in LRW .....	32
Table 2-9: SWAT model hydrology parameters sensitivity .....	36
Table 2-10: Basin level calibrated parameters for the Beauford and Le Sueur watersheds.....	39
Table 2-11: Calibration of parameters governing surface and subsurface hydrology....	40
Table 2-12: Water budget components of the LRW (1994-2006).....	45
Table 2-13: Water yield versus areal coverage .....	45
Table 2-14: Average monthly and annual stream flow using standard HRU and the modified CCA-HRU.....	47
Table 2-15: Average annual water balance components for the standard HRU and the modified CCA-HRU approach .....	47
Table 2-16: SWAT modeling study water budget results for the region .....	48
Table 3-1: Erosion and sediment transport models .....	58
Table 3-2: Imet used for sensitivity analysis .....	64
Table 3-3: Sediment calibration parameters used by SWAT modelers .....	64
Table 3-4: Sediment parameter bounds for calibration .....	65
Table 3-5: Management operations associated with sediment .....	69
Table 3-6: Average annual hydrology and sediment yield of LRW .....	76
Table 3-7: Summary of sediment yield Vs contributing areas of LRW.....	78
Table 3-8: Predicted and measured sediment loads from the LRW and its major tributaries in the 2006 growing season.....	80
Table 3-9: Sediment loss under different tillage BMP scenarios .....	82
Table 3-10: Sediment loss under different VFS BMP scenarios.....	83
Table 3-11: Effects of planting rye as a cover crop in reducing sediment loss.....	84
Table 4-1: Summary of calibrated phosphorus parameters in the LRW SWAT model .....	102
Table 4-2: Annual Phosphorus Loss in the LRW (kg/ha) .....	104
Table 4-3: Phosphorus loss in the major sub-watersheds of LRW .....	105
Table 4-4: LRW Phosphorus Budget .....	107
Table 4-5: Relative effects of application of different BMPs in reducing P losses in the LRW .....	108

Table 5-1: Baseline scheduled management operations for corn-soybean rotation .....	125
Table 5-2: Input parameters associated with nitrogen.....	126
Table 5-3: Nitrogen inputs to the LRW .....	132
Table 5-4: Nitrogen outputs from the LRW .....	132
Table 5-5: Nitrogen losses from the sub-watersheds of the LRW .....	133
Table 5-6: Annual Nitrogen loss in the LRW (kg/ha) .....	134
Table 5-7: Relative effects of application of different BMPs in reducing N loss in the LRW .....	136
Table 6-1: Pesticide models.....	145
Table 6-2: Physico-chemical properties of selected pesticides .....	149
Table 6-3: Baseline scheduled herbicide applications.....	149
Table 6-4: Proportion of pesticide losses in solution and adsorbed forms.....	151
Table 7-1: Scheduled management operations for baseline corn-soybean rotation .....	172
Table 7-2: PHU for crops in the LRW .....	173
Table 7-3: Measured and predicted corn grain yield at Beauford sub-watershed .....	177
Table 7-4: Measured and predicted soybean grain yield at Beauford sub-watershed ..	178
Table 7-5: Corn and Soybean grain and biomass yield under different rotations in the LRW .....	179
Table 7-6: Water quality impacts of shifting from a C-S to a C-C-S rotation .....	181
Table 7-7: Switchgrass production potential in the LRW .....	182
Table 7-8: Water quality effects of planting switchgrass in the LRW .....	183
Table 7-9: Water quality impacts of residue removal under C-S rotation .....	185
Table 7-10: Water quality impacts of residue removal under C-C-S rotation .....	186

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2-1: Location map of Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW).....	15
Figure 2-2: Le Sueur watershed Cross Section A-B .....	17
Figure 2-3: Le Sueur River watershed major tributaries .....	19
Figure 2-4: Input data layers to build the LRW SWAT model .....	21
Figure 2-5: Stream flow, water quality and weather monitoring stations in LRW .....	23
Figure 2-6: Compound Topographic Index (CTI).....	31
Figure 2-7: Stream power Index (SPI) .....	31
Figure 2-8: Critical contributing areas In the Beauford sub-watershed .....	32
Figure 2-9: CCAs in the LRW .....	33
Figure 2-10: Average daily streamflow and baseflow in the Beauford sub-watershed .	34
Figure 2-11: Le Sueur River average daily streamflow and baseflow .....	35
Figure 2-12: Cumulative precipitation for the period 2000-2005 .....	37
Figure 2-13: Calibration year precipitation vs normal year precipitation .....	37
Figure 2-14: Calibration of monthly stream flow.....	38
Figure 2-15: Validation of monthly flow in the Beauford sub-watershed .....	41
Figure 2-16: Validation of monthly flow in the LRW .....	41
Figure 2-18: Annual flow in the LRW .....	42
Figure 2-17: Annual flow in Beauford sub-watershed .....	42
Figure 2-19: Average annual water budget .....	43
Figure 2-20: Average monthly distribution of the water balance components (1994- 2006) .....	44
Figure 2-21: Spatial variation in water yield in the LRW .....	46
Figure 3-1: Sensitivity of sediment related parameters .....	70
Figure 3-2: Calibration of sediment load in Beauford sub-watershed (Year 2000).....	71
Figure 3-3: Validation of annual sediment yield in the Beauford watershed.....	72
Figure 3-4: Average annual sediment yield from LRW uplands .....	73
Figure 3-5: Validation of annual sediment yield in the LRW .....	73
Figure 3-6: Average monthly sediment yield of LRW (1994-2006).....	74
Figure 3-7: Sediment yield runoff relationship .....	75
Figure 3-8: Sediment yield versus precipitation.....	75
Figure 3-9: HRU based spatial distribution of sediment yield in the LRW .....	77
Figure 3-10: Cumulative sediment yield vs contributing watershed area of LRW .....	78
Figure 3-11: Sub-watershed based spatial distribution of sediment yield.....	79
Figure 3-12: Average annual upland sediment yield of LRW major sub-watersheds ...	79
Figure 3-13: Comparison of different BMP sediment loss reduction potentials.....	81
Figure 4-1: SWAT phosphorus pools and phosphorus cycle processes.....	94
Figure 4-2: Relative sensitivity of P related parameters .....	98

Figure 4-3: Phosphorus calibration in the Beauford Sub-watershed.....	99
Figure 4-4: Monthly Phosphorus loss validation in the Beauford sub-watershed.....	100
Figure 4-5: Average monthly Phosphorus loss validation in the Beauford sub-watershed .....	100
Figure 4-6: Monthly Phosphorus loss validations in the LRW .....	101
Figure 4-7: Monthly Phosphorus loss validation in the LRW (2000-2006).....	101
Figure 4-8: Monthly average phosphorus concentration in the LRW .....	103
Figure 4-9: Monthly average phosphorus load in the LRW.....	104
Figure 4-10: Phosphorus contributing area vs load.....	105
Figure 4-11: Spatial distribution of phosphorus loss in the LRW.....	106
Figure 4-12: BMP scenarios potential to reduce the total P losses of the LRW .....	108
Figure 5-1: SWAT soil nitrogen processes .....	118
Figure 5-2: Relative sensitivity of nitrogen related parameters .....	127
Figure 5-3: Nitrate-Nitrogen calibration in the Beauford sub-watershed. ....	128
Figure 5-4: Average monthly Nitrogen loss validation in the Beauford sub-watershed .....	129
Figure 5-5: Monthly Nitrogen Loss Validations in the LRW .....	129
Figure 5-6: Relationship between rainfall and snowfall with tile loss of Nitrate-N ....	130
Figure 5-7: Water yield Vs Nitrate-N losses .....	130
Figure 5-8: Tile flow Vs Nitrate-N losses .....	131
Figure 5-9: Relationships between water yield and tile flow with Nitrate-N losses ....	131
Figure 5-10: Average monthly Nitrogen loss validation in the LRW (2000-2006).....	133
Figure 5-11: Contributing area vs Nitrogen loss .....	134
Figure 5-12: Nitrogen contributing areas in the LRW .....	135
Figure 6-1: Pesticide calibration results in the Beauford sub-Watershed .....	150
Figure 6-2: Annual loss of Acetochlor in the LRW .....	151
Figure 6-3: Average monthly cumulative losses of acetochlor in the LRW .....	152
Figure 6-4: Average monthly loss of Atrazine in the LRW .....	152
Figure 6-5: Annual loss of Atrazine in the LRW .....	153
Figure 6-6: Annual loss of Metolachlor in the LRW .....	153
Figure 6-7: Average monthly loss of Metolachlor in the LRW .....	154
Figure 6-8: Effect of changing application rate of Acetochlor in the Beauford watershed. ....	155
Figure 6-9: Effect of watershed application area on Acetochlor losses. ....	156
Figure 6-10: Acetochlor losses in response to application date and rate. ....	157
Figure 6-11: Effect of Acetochlor incorporation on Acetochlor losses.....	158
Figure 6-12: Effect of buffer strips on Acetochlor losses. ....	158
Figure 6-13: Relative importance of Acetochlor management practices in the LRW..	159
Figure 7-1: Optimum temperature to grow corn-soybean and switchgrass in the LRW	174
Figure 7-2: PHU in the LRW 1990-2006.....	174

Figure 7-3: Cumulative average annual PHU in the LRW..... 175

Figure 7-4: Corn LAI calibration ..... 176

Figure 7-5: Soybean LAI calibration..... 176

Figure 7-6: Calibration of corn grain yield..... 177

Figure 7-7: Calibration of soybean grain yield in the Beauford sub-watershed..... 178

Figure 7-8: Corn acreage and production in LRW ..... 180

Figure 7-9: Soybean acreage and production in LRW ..... 180

Figure 7-10: Sediment yield response to residue removal and changes in crop rotation  
..... 184

## **Chapter 1 : GENERAL INTRODUCTION**

The water quality of Mississippi River and its watersheds have been impacted by sediment and nutrient pollutants from crop lands that cover 58% of its area (Committee on the Mississippi River and the Clean Water Act., 2008). The increased transport of nutrients from the basin contributes to enlargement of the hypoxic zone in the Gulf of Mexico (Rabalais et al., 1996). Several reaches of the river and its tributaries have been listed as impaired under CWA sections 303(d) (Committee on the Mississippi River and the Clean Water Act., 2008). The Minnesota River Basin, one of the head waters of the Mississippi River, has 336 impaired rivers and lakes listed in the 2008 303(d). The Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW), in the Minnesota River Basin, has 14 lakes and rivers included in the list (MRBDC, 2009).

The Minnesota River Basin in general and the LRW in particular require a better understanding of the type, extent and sources of pollutant loadings, and the effects of alternative management practices to mitigate water quality problems. Physically based distributed watershed modeling approaches are needed that have the capacity to analyze the quantity and quality of water resources, and identify existing and potential watershed stressors or pollutants as well as the relative importance of best management options (Muttiah and Wurbs, 2002). One such model that is recommended by US EPA for TMDL studies is the Soil and Water Assessment Tool Model (SWAT). The SWAT model has the ability to adequately simulate hydrology and the sediment, nutrient and pesticide losses under different management conditions in agricultural watersheds. Major components of the model include hydrology, weather, erosion, soil temperature, crop growth, nutrients, pesticides and agricultural management practices (Neitsch et al., 2005).

This study was conducted in one of the major watersheds of the Minnesota River Basin, namely the LRW. The LRW covers a total area of about 2,850 km<sup>2</sup>, which represents 7% of the area in the Minnesota River Basin. According to the estimates of Mulla (1997) and data from Minnesota State University at Mankato, this watershed contributes

53% of the sediment load, 20% of the nitrate-nitrogen load, 31% of the phosphorus load to the Minnesota River Basin. The pesticides acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor are frequently detected in the LRW (Minnesota River Basin Data Center MRBDC., 2004). Thus, it is imperative to conduct research that can contribute towards mitigating the contaminant loads from this watershed. For this purpose, the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) model developed by USDA-ARS was selected to study the watershed. The contributions of this research study will be:

- Test applicability of the SWAT hydrologic model under the climate, farming systems, hydrologic and physiographic conditions of Minnesota
- Improve the runoff simulation of the SWAT model by including the concept of Critical Contributing Areas (CCAs)
- Identify factors that influence the process of mobilization and transport of surface and sub-surface runoff, sediment and agricultural chemicals
- Quantify sediment, nutrient (nitrate-nitrogen, phosphorus) and pesticide (atrazine, acetochlor and metolachlor) losses from the watershed
- Estimate the spatial and temporal patterns of water quality pollutants in the LRW and prioritize critical sub-watersheds
- Evaluate the effectiveness of alternative best management practices (BMPs) at reducing pollutant loads from the LRW
- Overall, the study is expected to contribute to the future development of TMDL studies in the LRW.

This dissertation is organized with the first and last chapters focusing on the general introduction and conclusions, respectively. The remaining five chapters discuss the LRW hydrology (chapter 2), sediment (chapter 3), phosphorus (chapter 4), nitrate-N (chapter 5), and the herbicides acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor (chapter 6), and water quality impacts of producing alternative biofuel crops (chapter 7). Each of the chapters discuss the study area, problem statements, specific objectives, modeling approaches, and results with a focus on input parameters sensitivity analysis, calibration and validation, spatial distribution of pollutant source areas and impacts of alternative BMPs.

## **Chapter 2 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED HYDROLOGY**

## **SYNOPSIS**

The Le Sueur River watershed (LRW), HUC 07020011, is one of twelve major watersheds in the Minnesota River Basin located in South Central Minnesota. It covers 2,850 km<sup>2</sup>, and agricultural land use accounts for 87% of the available area. The LRW is impaired for sediment and nutrients in several locations. Investigation of the LRW hydrology is vital for the planning, and management of its water resources. The objective of this study was to evaluate the hydrologic components of the LRW using the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) model. Simulation of surface and sub-surface hydrologic processes was performed based on input data for soils, land use, elevation, drainage, climate, and management practices in the LRW. The ability of the SWAT model to predict hydrologic processes in the LRW was evaluated through sensitivity analysis, calibration and validation. The model was calibrated and validated from 2000-2006 in the Beauford sub-watershed, located near the center of the LRW. The calibrated model parameters were transferred to the entire LRW region.

SWAT simulation results showed that the model predicted monthly total discharge in the LRW with high accuracy. The Nash-Sutcliffe efficiency (NSE) values for monthly flow in the Beauford sub-watershed were 0.77 and 0.88, respectively, during the calibration and validation periods. Validation of flow for the entire watershed over the years from 1994-2006 gave an NSE value of 0.73. The annual water budget of the LRW was made up of 71% evapotranspiration, 13% tile flow and 11% surface runoff. Baseflow contributes 49% of the annual 230 mm water yield in the watershed.

The simulated monthly and annual water yields showed a 2% improvement in model simulation efficiency (NSE) after including the critical contributing area (CCA-HRU) concept in the SWAT model. This improvement in the simulated hydrology of the LRW is important for an accurate assessment of the fate and transport of sediment and agricultural pollutants from the watershed. Overall, the SWAT model was found to be an effective tool for describing hydrologic processes in the LRW.

## **2.1. INTRODUCTION**

The quantity and quality of surface water, subsurface water and ground water constitute the water resources continuum of a watershed. Effective management of watersheds necessitates basic understandings of the numerous processes and interactions between the water resources continuum of a watershed, pollutant loadings, the receiving water bodies and effects of management practices. Watershed models are cost effective tools to analyze the quantity and quality of water resources, in the planning, design, and operation of water use, distribution systems, and management activities (Wurbs, 1998; Mutiah and Wurbs, 2002).

### **2.1.1. Historical Overview of Watershed Models**

According to Singh and Woolhiser (2002), the origin of mathematical modeling dates back to the rational method developed by Mulvany (1850) and an event model relating storm runoff peak to rainfall intensity by Imbeau (1892). This was followed by the development of the unit hydrograph concept developed by Sherman in 1932, infiltration theory by Horton in 1933 and the Penman theory of evaporation in 1948 (Singh and Woolhiser, 2002).

Most of the modeling efforts prior to 1950 primarily focused on one component of the hydrologic cycle. Integration of hydrologic cycle components in watershed hydrologic modeling started after the development of Crawford and Linsley's (1966) Stanford Watershed Model (SWM), which became the foundation for the current Hydrological Simulation Program FORTRAN (HSPF) model (Ahmadi et al., 2006; DeBarry and Quimpo, 1999a; Sherman, 1932). After the SWM model, a number of lumped models that consider the catchment as a lumped whole were created (Dawdy and O'Donnell, 1965a; DeBarry and Quimpo, 1999b; Ewen et al., 2000; Singh and Frevert, 2002). Further research and improvement of watershed models led to the development of contemporary distributed process based models. Popular models include the Agricultural Non-Point Source Pollution Model (AGNPS) (Young, 1987), Soil and Water Integrated Model (SWIM) (Krysanova et al., 2000), HSPF (Bicknell et al., 1997),

Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) (Arnold et al., 1998; Srinivasan et al., 1998), and the Dynamic Watershed Simulation Model (DWSM) (Borah et al., 2004) .

Physically based distributed hydrologic models, where watershed processes are linked through surface and subsurface flow routing, are an important tool to address the water quality decision making processes (Bouraoui et al., 1997; Srinivasan et al., 1998; Wurbs et al., 1994). Compared to the lumped conceptual models, physically based process models are better suited for the accurate simulation of spatial and temporal patterns in surface runoff, sediment, chemicals, and nutrients and their associated transport pathways. Distributed models rely on the spatial variability of model input parameters, while lumped hydrologic models simulate a spatially averaged hydrologic system (Arnold et al., 1999; Chow et al., 1988.; Mehta et al., 2004; Muttiah and Wurbs, 2002; Sherman, 1932; Singh and Frevert, 2002).

The importance of physically based, distributed and continuous time model like SWAT has increased with the advent of computationally efficient computers, GIS software and availability of spatial input data (Borah and Bera, 2003; Muttiah and Wurbs, 2002; Singh, 1995b). The extensive input data for the distributed watershed models are often generated from Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and regional or local surveys (Ewen et al., 2000; Refsgaard, 1997; Srinivasan et al., 1998).

### **2.1.2. The Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) Model**

SWAT is a physically-based continuous watershed simulation model that operates on a daily time step and for long-term simulations. It was created in the early 1990s by the USDA-ARS Grassland, Soil and Water Research Laboratory in Temple, Texas. It has undergone a continual review and expansion of capabilities since it was created (Arnold et al., 1998; Neitsch, et al., 2002; Neitsch et al., 2005).

SWAT is used to support the Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) analyses performed for impaired waters by the different states as mandated by the 1972 U.S. Clean Water Act (Borah et al., 2006; Shirmohammadi et al., 2006; USEPA, 2006b). The U.S.

Environmental Protection Agency's BASINS (Better Assessment of Science Integrating Point & Nonpoint Sources) software has included SWAT as one component of its modeling framework. The USDA has used SWAT within the Conservation Effects Assessment Project. In the Hydrologic Modeling of the United States Project (HUMUS), SWAT was used to analyze water management scenarios (Arnold et al., 1999). SWAT has the functionality to model water quality parameters including sediments, nutrients and pesticides in agricultural watersheds. More recently the use of the SWAT model has been expanded worldwide. Gassman et al. (2007) and Williams et al. (2008) have described the historical development of the SWAT model.

Major components of the SWAT model include hydrology, weather, erosion, soil temperature, crop growth, nutrients, pesticides and agricultural management practices (Neitsch et al., 2005). This model has the ability to predict changes in sediment, nutrient and pesticide loads with respect to the different management conditions in watershed. The modeling approach in SWAT subdivides a watershed into multiple sub-watersheds, and the sub-watersheds further into Hydrologic Response Units (HRUs) that consist of homogeneous land use, soils, slope, and management (Gassman et al., 2007; Neitsch et al., 2005; Williams et al., 2008). The water balance of each HRU in the watershed is represented by four storage volumes: snow, soil profile (0–2m), shallow aquifer (2–20m) and deep aquifer (>20m). The hydrologic components of the SWAT model have incorporated routines to simulate evapotranspiration, snowmelt, surface runoff, infiltration, percolation, return flow, groundwater flow, channel transmission losses, pond and reservoir storage, channel routing, tile drainage and plant water use processes (Arnold et al., 1999).

According to L'vovich (1979), 57% of the total precipitation in North America is returned to the atmosphere through evapotranspiration (ET). Irmak et al. (2005) described ET as an important component of watershed hydrologic cycle that needs accurate quantification in order to develop best management practices to protect surface and ground water quality. The fact that direct measurement of actual ET (AET) is

difficult requires estimation of AET based on potential ET (PET). Grismer et al., (2002) indicated that there are over 50 methods of estimating PET.

The SWAT model uses three different methods for estimating PET and AET; namely, Hargreaves, Priestley-Taylor, and Penman-Monteith. Wang et al.,(2006) tested the appropriateness of the three methods in the Wild Rice River watershed, located in northwestern Minnesota. The SWAT model simulation of the monthly, seasonal, and annual mean discharges was found to be satisfactory with all three methods. However, the Hargreaves method was slightly superior to the other two models in estimating evapotranspiration.

The SWAT simulation of surface runoff is made for each HRU using a modification of the SCS curve number method or the Green & Ampt infiltration method (Green and Ampt, 1911). The peak runoff rate is predicted using a modification of the rational formula. The model calculates the difference between the amount of rainfall and surface runoff to represent the amount of infiltration into the soil profile. Optionally, the sub-daily precipitation based Green & Ampt infiltration method is included in the SWAT model to directly model infiltration.

The continued movement of water through each soil layer in the soil profile after infiltration, also called redistribution, is calculated in SWAT using a storage routing technique. When field capacity of a soil layer is exceeded and the layer below is not saturated, the SWAT model percolation routine starts. The flow rate is governed by the saturated conductivity of the soil layer. Redistribution is affected by soil temperature. If temperature in a particular layer is  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below, no redistribution is allowed from that layer. Once the water content throughout the entire profile is uniform, redistribution ceases.

Lateral subsurface flow, or interflow in the soil profile (0-2m) is calculated simultaneously with redistribution using the kinematic storage model (Sloan and Moore, 1984). This method is based on a mass continuity equation along a hill slope

segment used as a control volume and assumes that the lines of flow in the saturated zone are parallel to the impermeable boundary and the hydraulic gradient equals the slope of the bed.

The lateral flow prediction equation is:

$$q_{lat} = 0.024 \left( \frac{2SW * K_{sat} * \sin \alpha}{\phi_d L} \right) \quad (2.1)$$

Where,  $q_{lat}$  = lateral flow (mm/ day); SW = drainable volume of soil water per unit area of saturated thickness (mm/day),  $K_{sat}$  = saturated hydraulic conductivity (mm/h); L = flow length (m);  $\alpha$  = slope of the land:  $\phi_d$  = drainable porosity

SW is given by:

$$SW = \frac{1000 * \phi_d * H_o * L}{2} \quad (2.2)$$

Where,  $\phi_d$  is the drainable porosity of the soil layer (mm/mm) and is calculated as:

$$\phi_d = \phi_{soil} - \phi_{fc} \quad (2.3)$$

Where,  $\phi_{soil}$  is the total porosity of the soil layer (mm/mm), and  $\phi_{fc}$  is the porosity of the soil layer at field capacity water content (mm/mm).

In HRUs without subsurface drainage tiles, lateral flow travel time ( $TT_{lag}$ ) is calculated based on kinematic storage model:

$$TT_{lag} = 10.4 * \frac{L_{hill}}{K_{sat.mx}} \quad (2.4)$$

Where,  $TT_{lag}$  is the lateral flow travel time (days),  $L_{hill}$  is the hillslope length (m), and  $K_{sat.mx}$  is the highest layer saturated hydraulic conductivity in the soil profile (mm/hr).

For watersheds with subsurface drainage, the SWAT model has a tile drainage routine to drain soil water in excess of the soil field capacity. Estimation of tile drainage is a function of the depth of drains, time required for the tile drains to bring the soil layer to field capacity and a drainage lag parameter (Neitsch, et al., 2002).

$$tile_{wtr} = \frac{h_{wtbl} - h_{drain}}{h_{wtbl}} * (SW - FC) * \left( 1 - \exp\left[\frac{-24}{t_{drain}}\right] \right) \quad (2.5)$$

Where,  $tile_{wtr}$ , is the amount of water removed from the layer on a given day by tile drainage (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $h_{wtbl}$  is the height of the water table above the impervious zone (mm),  $h_{drain}$  is the height of the tile drain above the impervious zone (mm), SW is the water content of the profile on a given day (mm H<sub>2</sub>O), FC is the field capacity water content of the profile (mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and  $t_{drain}$  is the time required to drain the soil to field capacity (hrs).

The model calculates lateral flow travel time or utilizes a user-defined travel time. The lag time of water in tile system is given by:

$$tile_{lag} = 24 * TT_{lag} \quad (2.6)$$

The SWAT model water balance is simulated in two major divisions, the land phase and the routing phase. Once runoff has reached the stream channel of a watershed, the routing phase controls all the processes to the outlet. Runoff routing through the channels is based on the variable storage coefficient method (Williams, 1969). The method developed by Arnold et al. (1995) is used to adjust the transmission losses, evaporation, diversions, and return flow is used to compute flow based on Manning's equation. In this method, flow is not routed between HRUs, but routing is used for flow in the channel network. The fact that a large number of HRUs can be continuously simulated using SWAT makes this model applicable to large watersheds.

The hydrologic cycle is simulated by the water balance equation given by:

$$SW_t = SW_0 + \sum_{i=1}^t (R_i - Q_i - ET_i - P_i - QR_i) \quad (2.7)$$

Where,  $SW_t$  is the final soil water content (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $SW_0$  is the initial soil water content on day i (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $t$  is the time (days),  $R_i$  is the amount of precipitation on day i (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $Q_i$  is the amount of surface runoff on day i (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $ET_i$  is the amount of

evapotranspiration on day  $i$  ( $\text{mm H}_2\text{O}$ ),  $P_i$  is the amount of water entering the vadose zone from the soil profile on day  $i$  ( $\text{mm H}_2\text{O}$ ), and  $QR_i$  is the amount of return flow on day  $i$  ( $\text{mm H}_2\text{O}$ ).

### **2.1.3. Groundwater Flow/ Baseflow Hydrology**

The continuous interaction of groundwater with surface water sustains streamflow during periods of low flow, moderates water level fluctuations of groundwater-connected lakes, and maintains wetlands. Understanding this interconnection is very essential for the development of effective water resources management and policy (Smakhtin, 2001; Winter, 1998). More importantly, the shallow flow component of ground-water flow systems, termed baseflow, affects the overall water budget of a watershed. The USGS glossary of hydrologic terms defines baseflow as that part of the stream discharge that is not attributable to direct runoff from precipitation or melting snow; it is usually sustained by groundwater discharge.

It is often important to minimize the risk of contamination of shallow aquifers from both point sources and nonpoint sources (Pye and Patrick, 1983; Moody, 1990). Careful consideration of the overall water budget and management of stream flow requires the separation of the baseflow component from surface runoff. There are numerous baseflow separation analysis techniques for estimating the groundwater component of streamflow. These techniques make use of the time-series record of stream flow to derive the baseflow signature, either graphically defining the points where baseflow intersects the rising and falling limbs of the quick flow response, or by applying a filtering procedure where the entire stream hydrograph is used to derive a baseflow hydrograph. Automated baseflow separation and recession analysis techniques of Arnold et al. (1995), and the Web-based Hydrograph Analysis Tool (WHAT) are common tools for baseflow separation (Lim and Engel, 2004; Lim et al., 2005b).

The separation of baseflow is an important task to facilitate calibration of many current hydrologic watershed models, including SWAT and HSPF. These models make use of

the outputs from baseflow separation to obtain the ratio of baseflow to surface runoff, and to estimate the baseflow recession constant (Arnold et al., 1998; Tallaksen, 1995).

SWAT model uses the following routines to estimate baseflow:

$$Q_{gwj} = Q_{gwj-1} * \exp^{(-\alpha_{gw} * \Delta t)} + W_{rchrg} * (1 - \exp^{(-\alpha_{gw} * \Delta t)}) \quad (2.8)$$

Where,  $Q_{gwj}$  = groundwater flow into the main channel on day j;  $\alpha_{gw}$  = base flow recession constant; and  $\Delta t$  = time step.  $W_{rchrg}$  is the amount of recharge entering the shallow aquifer on day i (mm H2O)

#### 2.1.4. Snowmelt Hydrology

Snowmelt and snow formation parameters are important hydrology calibration parameters in the SWAT model. Snowmelt events are considered in the same way as rainfall events. Wang and Melesse (2005) have evaluated the snowmelt algorithm of SWAT in western Minnesota where the average annual snowfall is 146 mm. They reported satisfactory monthly performance of the model. Zhang et al. (2008) in their study of the Yellow River in China have shown good performance of the snowmelt algorithms of the SWAT model.

Snowfall accumulation and snowmelt are a function of the daily mean air temperature. The parameters that control the snowpack accumulation and melt are defined at the watershed scale. Heterogeneity between different HRUs that can influence the melt dynamics can be accounted for through the following SWAT model parameters.

- The snowpack temperature lag factor TIMP, that dictates how quickly the snowpack temperature is affected by air temperature;
- The snowmelt base temperature SMTMP, above which the snowpack melts;
- The maximum and minimum temperature-index snowmelt factors SMFMX and SMFMN;

- The snowfall temperature threshold SFTMP, below which the total precipitation is taken as solid;
- The areal snow coverage thresholds at 50% and 100%, SNO50COV and SNOCOVMX, that together control the areal depletion curve accounting for variable snow coverage.

### **2.1.5. Surface Runoff Hydrology and Critical Contributing Areas (CCAs)**

Identifying the hydrological processes generating runoff is central to developing watershed management strategies for protecting water quality. The two primary hydrological mechanisms that generate overland flow are infiltration excess and saturation excess. The infiltration excess, often called Hortonian flow after R. E. Horton, occurs when the application of water to the surface soil exceeds the infiltration capacity of the soil. Soil type, land use and vegetation cover are major factors controlling the generation of infiltration excess runoff (Betson, 1964, Dickinson and Whiteley, 1970). Saturation excess runoff, on the other hand, is generated in locations where the soil is saturated to the surface. Apart from infiltration excess, differences in local topography, landscape position and the depth to water table are factors that control saturation excess runoff. In most watersheds, both Hortonian and saturation excess processes contribute to runoff generation; however, one or the other often dominates (Mehta et al., 2003; Betson, 1964; Dickinson and Whiteley, 1970).

The infiltration excess approach can be useful at a field scale, but may not be good enough to simulate hydrologic processes at a watershed scale, especially in areas where significant saturation excess runoff occurs (Mehta et al., 2003). Betson (1964) and Moldenhauer *et al.* (1960) hypothesized that only relatively small portion of watershed areas contribute to the direct runoff flow. Therefore, appropriate spatial and temporal representation of infiltration excess and saturation excess runoff is the most important task in hydrologic modeling studies.

Models such as SWAT and AGNPS make use of curve number methods for runoff estimation. Hence, they do not identify discrete saturated areas in the landscape. These models estimate the runoff potential of each portion of the landscape based on infiltration excess (Mehta et al., 2004). Kinnell (2005) has shown the inability of the USLE to estimate soil erosion for individual storm events and large areas. The USLE accuracy can be improved by coupling it with a hydrological rainfall-excess model (Novotny & Olem, 1994).

The size and location of saturation excess areas within watersheds affect the amount of runoff generated and pollutant transport. This is the fundamental source of the concept behind "critical contributing areas (CCAs)" in this and previous studies. Walter et al. (2000) have defined Variable source area (VSA) hydrology as a watershed runoff process whereby saturated areas are the primary sources of runoff. In watersheds dominated by VSA hydrology, runoff production is independent of rainfall intensity. The VSA areas within the watershed are more susceptible to produce runoff than the rest of non-runoff generating areas. (Srinivasan et al., 2002; Needelman et al., 2004).

A quantifiable description of CCAs can provide the basis for water quality risk assessment and developing water quality management practices for non-point source pollution. The challenge is how to incorporate the CCA hydrology so as to capture the role of saturation excess runoff areas in models that use CN runoff methods, like SWAT. This project seeks to develop methods for identifying and representing CCAs in watersheds to provide a more physically realistic simulation of runoff than one involving simply infiltration excess runoff applied in a uniform fashion.

## 2.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

### 2.2.1. The Study Area

The study was conducted in one of the twelve major watersheds of the Minnesota River Basin, the Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW). The LRW is designated using an 8-Digit Hydrologic Unit Code (HUC) of 7020011. It is located in south central Minnesota covering a total area of about 2,850 km<sup>2</sup> in the counties of Blue Earth (33%), Waseca (31.8%), Faribault (22%), Freeborn (9.7%), Steele (3.2%), and Le Sueur (0.3%) (Figure 2-1).

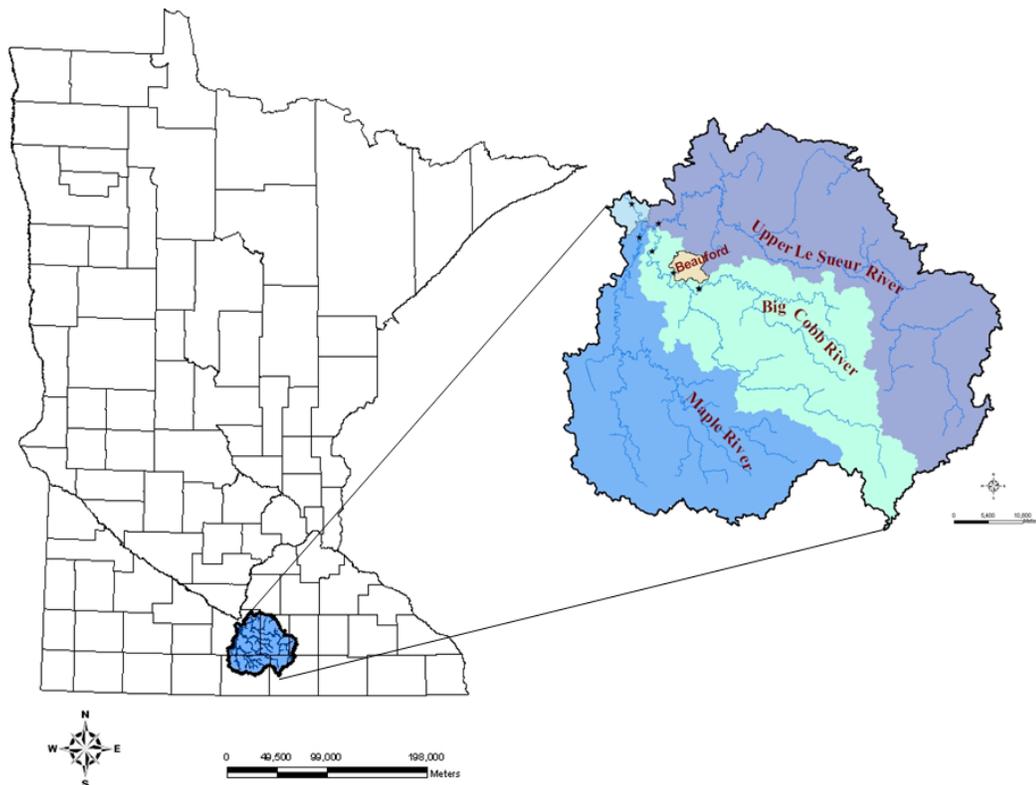


Figure 2-1: Location Map of Le Sueur River Watershed

The total human population of LRW is about 56,100. Agriculture is the primary land use in the watershed, accounting for approximately 87% of the available area. A two-year corn/soybean rotation comprises approximately 93% of cropped lands within the watershed; small grains, hay, grasslands, and lands enrolled in the Conservation Reserve Program (CRP) make up the rest (USDA-NRCS, 2006). The total number of

livestock in the LRW is about 1.1 million, of which 59.3% are swine, 28.2% turkey, 4.2% beef and dairy cattle and 8.3% chicken and other animals (USDA, 2008).

The Le Sueur Watershed has a continental climate with cold dry winters and warm wet summers. Based on long term weather averages between 1971 and 2000 recorded at the Southern Research and Outreach Center of Waseca, the average monthly temperatures range from 11 °F in January to 71 °F in July. The average annual precipitation ranges from 737 mm to 838 mm (USDA, 2008).

Surface relief of the Le Sueur River Watershed converges from the east, west, and south toward the central portion of the watershed. Elevation in the watershed ranges from 233 to 418 m a.s.l. The highest values occur in the eastern and southeastern portions of the watershed, while the lowest are found across the central and western part towards its outlet. The elevation difference along the cross section AB (Figure 2-2) that goes from the southeastern side of the watershed to its outlet over 65 km away is 185m. As shown in the profile graph of Figure 2-2, the streams flow through rolling landscapes in the headwaters and then they flow in very deep incised stream channels near the outlet. The western half of the watershed lies primarily within the Rolling Moraine agroecoregion, where the topography is a complex mixture of gently sloping (2-6%) well drained loamy soils and nearly level (0-2%) poorly drained loamy soils. The landscape at the lower reach of the Le Sueur River watershed is a region of high stream bluffs where the river flows through deeply incised channels. The center of the watershed was formed in glacial Lake Minnesota, and has flat (0-2% slope) landscapes with clay deposits on top of glacial till. The Le Sueur watershed has about 115 soil series types. The most prevalent 8 soil series in LRW (Table 2-1) cover 147,693 ha or 51% of the total watershed area. Many of these soils are poorly drained fine textured mollisols which have to be tile drained for optimum crop production.

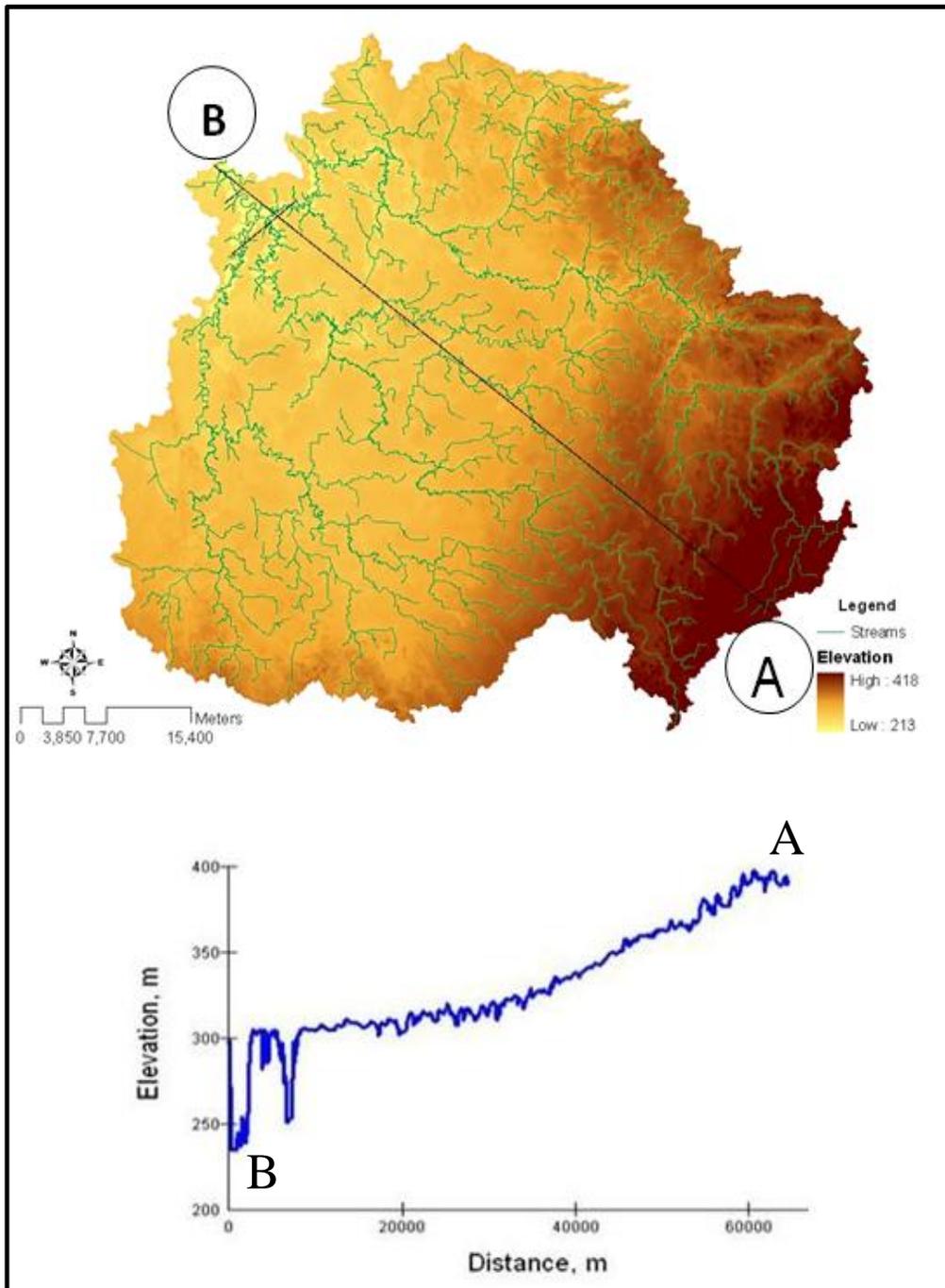


Figure 2-2: Le Sueur Watershed Cross Section A-B

Table 2-1: Soil Types in the Le Sueur Watershed

#	Soil Types	Wshed area (%)	HYD_GRP	Texture	SOL_BD (g/cc)	SOL_AWC (mm/mm)	SOL_K (mm/hr)
1	Marna	8.75	C	SICL-SIC-CL	1.25	0.2	2.9
2	Webster	8.66	B	CL-CL-L	1.38	0.19	31
3	Nicollet	7.59	B	CL-CL-CL	1.2	0.19	29
4	Glencoe	7.22	B	L-SICL-CL-CL	1.4	0.2	15
5	Clarion	5.37	B	L-CL-L	1.42	0.17	30
6	Beauford	4.98	D	C-C-C	1.2	0.16	0.47
7	Guckeen	4.96	C	SICL-SIC-CL	1.25	0.21	0.83
8	Lester	3.74	B	L-CL-L	1.35	0.16	23
9	102 others	48.73					

Where: HYD\_GRP is the soil hydraulic group, SOL\_BD is the soil bulk density, SOL\_AWC is the available water capacity of soils and SOL\_K is the saturated hydraulic conductivity of soils.

Table 2-2: Distribution of Slope Steepness in the Le Sueur Watershed

Percent Slope	Area [ha]	% Watershed Area
0-2	231,254	80.3
2-6	48,042	16.7
6-12	6,826	2.3
> 12	1,901	0.7
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>288,023</b>	<b>100</b>

The Le Sueur River drainage network has three major tributaries, including the Maple River, Big Cobb River, and the Upper Le Sueur River. The drainage network also includes several smaller streams, public and private drainage systems, lakes, and wetlands. The watershed has a 1,933 km long stream network, of which 41% is perennial (Minnesota State University, October, 2000).

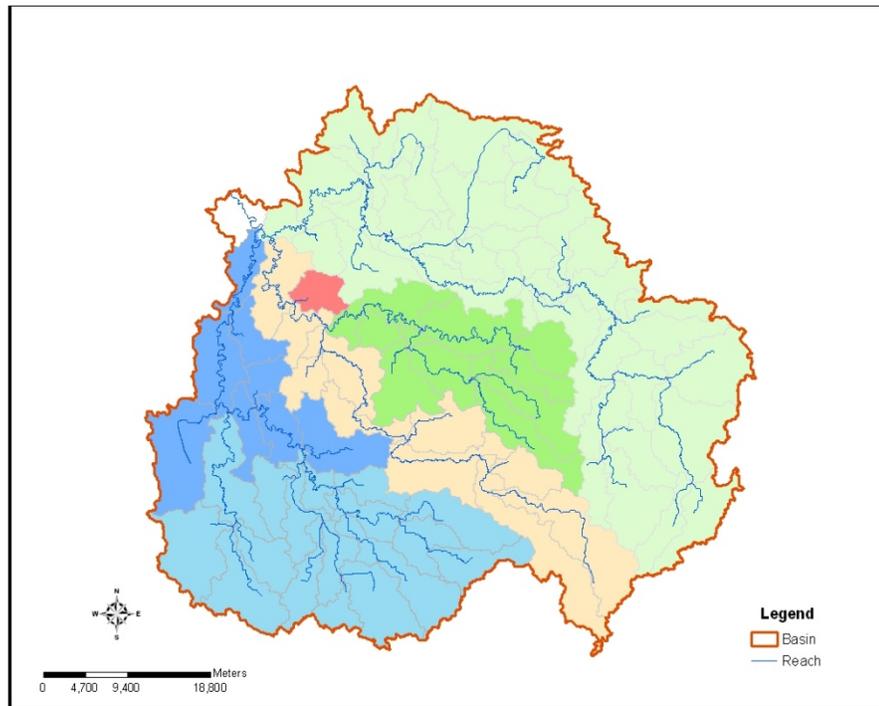


Figure 2-3: Le Sueur River Watershed Major Tributaries

### 2.2.2. Model Setup and Input Data Acquisition

The SWAT model configuration procedure subdivides a watershed into spatial units consisting of sub-basins. The LRW sub-basin delineation was made following the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources (DNR) subdivisions and matches the available flow and water quality monitoring stations. A 30m DEM was used to determine the slope and flow direction, which is used to determine sub-basin outlets and areas contributing discharge to the outlets. The Le Sueur River watershed was subdivided into a total of 84 sub-basins.

Further discretization of the sub-basins was made using areas with the same soil types, land use and slope to create the SWAT model computational units that are assumed to be homogeneous in hydrologic response, also called Hydrologic Response Units (HRUs). The soil types were delineated based on SSURGO soils data base with a modification made to adjust the available water capacity of saturation excess area soils

identified by using terrain attributes. Each HRU has its own unique parameters that are utilized in the simulation process. In each sub-basin, each land use representing over 10% of the subbasin area was included in the model; also included were each soil representing 2% or more of that land use area and each land slope representing 5% or more of that land use area. Accordingly, the LRW was subdivided in to 4,818 HRUs.

All the necessary spatial datasets and database input files for the LRW SWAT model were organized following the guidelines of Neitsch et al. (2004 and 2007). GIS data layers used to build the model included USGS 30 m Digital Elevation Model (DEM), the most detailed soils data from SSURGO, land use/land cover data of the USDA and the stream network from the Minnesota River Basin Data Center (MRBDC). (Table 2-3 and Figure 2-4).

Table 2-3: Data sources for the Le Sueur Watershed SWAT modeling

<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Source</b>	
<b>Digital Elevation Model (DEM)</b>	<a href="http://seamless.usgs.gov">http://seamless.usgs.gov</a>	<b>USGS</b>
<b>SSURGO soil</b>	<a href="http://www.ftw.nrcs.usda.gov">http://www.ftw.nrcs.usda.gov</a>	<b>USDA</b>
<b>Land use</b>	<a href="http://datagateway.nrcs.usda.gov">http://datagateway.nrcs.usda.gov</a>	<b>USDA</b>
<b>Stream network</b>	<a href="http://mrbdc.mnsu.edu/gis/lesueur">http://mrbdc.mnsu.edu/gis/lesueur</a>	<b>MRBDC</b>
<b>Weather</b>	<a href="http://climate.umn.edu">http://climate.umn.edu</a>	<b>U of M</b>
<b>Point Sources</b>		<b>MPCA</b>

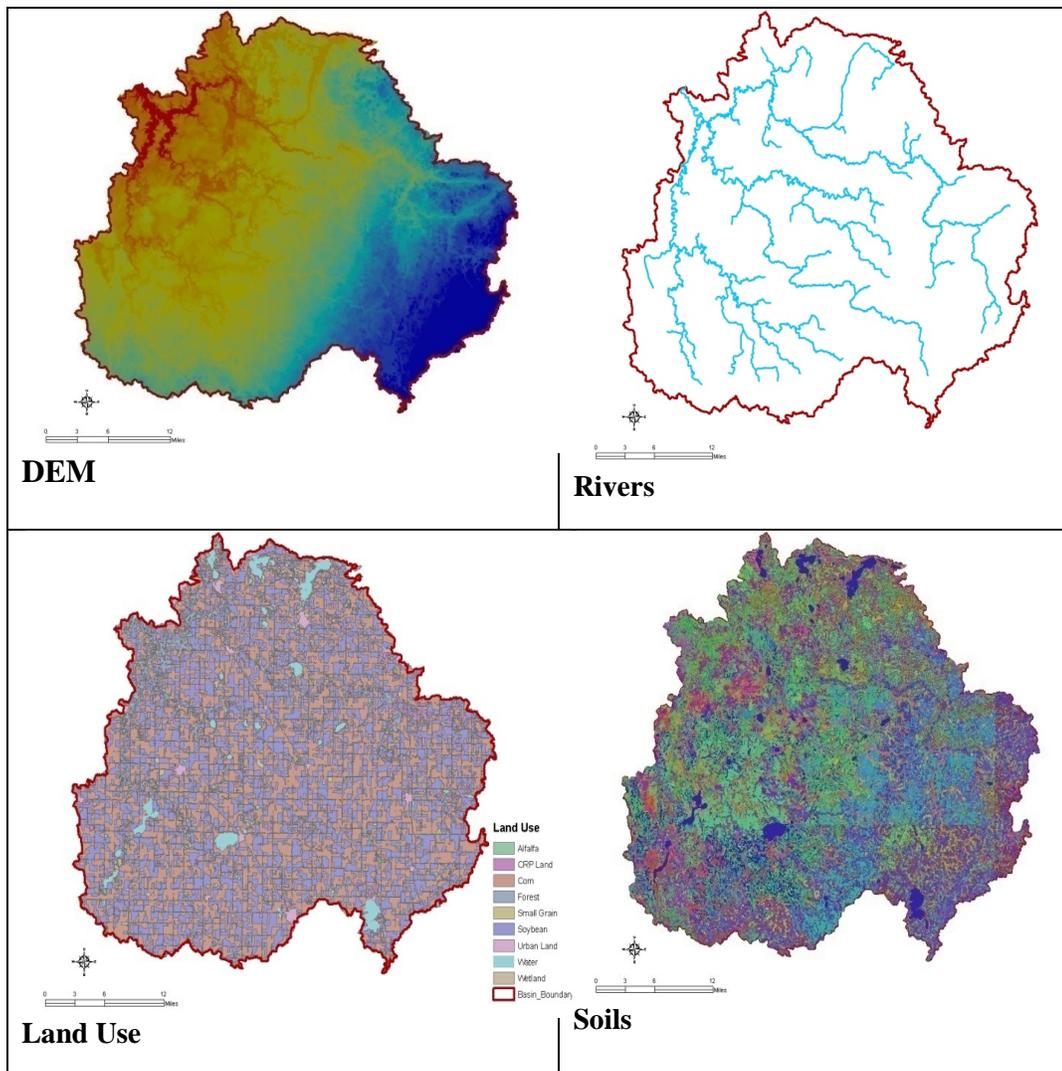


Figure 2-4: Input data layers to build the LRW SWAT Model

Table 2-4: LRW monitoring stations

<b>Station ID</b>	<b>Water Body</b>	<b>Drainage Area, ha</b>	<b>Record period</b>	<b>Recording Agency</b>
S003-860	Upper Le Sueur river	117,707	9 months/2006	DNR, MPCA
S003-446	Big Cobb	80,019	2004-2006	DNR, MPCA
S000-340	Le Sueur River nr Rapidan, MN66	284,499	1990-2006	USGS, MDA
S002-427	Maple	88,167	2004-2006	DNR, MPCA
S003-574	Little Cobb	34,065	1998-2006	USGS, MetCouncil, MDA
S001-210	Beauford Dtch	2,096	1998-2006	MetCouncil, MDA

The other SWAT model input database files that were not in GIS Layers were the management operations, stream water quality, point sources and weather data. Weather data for the LRW SWAT modeling was taken from nine different gauging stations of the MN State Climatology Office. The selected stations are distributed all over the watershed to effectively capture the spatial variability of LRW precipitation. The Thiessen Polygon method was used to define the LRW precipitation data discretization.

Measurements of stream flow and water quality recorded by USGS, MN Metropolitan Council, MPCA, DNR and MDA (Table 2-4) were used for model simulation, calibration and validation. The most detailed USDA crop land data (CLD) for the year 2006 was used for the LRW SWAT model land use data input (Figure 2-4 & Table 2-5).

Table 2-5: LRW land use in the year 2006

Land Use	%
Alfalfa	0.3
CRP Land	2.6
Corn	44.8
Forest	3.9
Small Grain	0.3
Soybean	37.0
Urban Land	7.1
Water	2.1
Wetland	1.8
Total	100.0

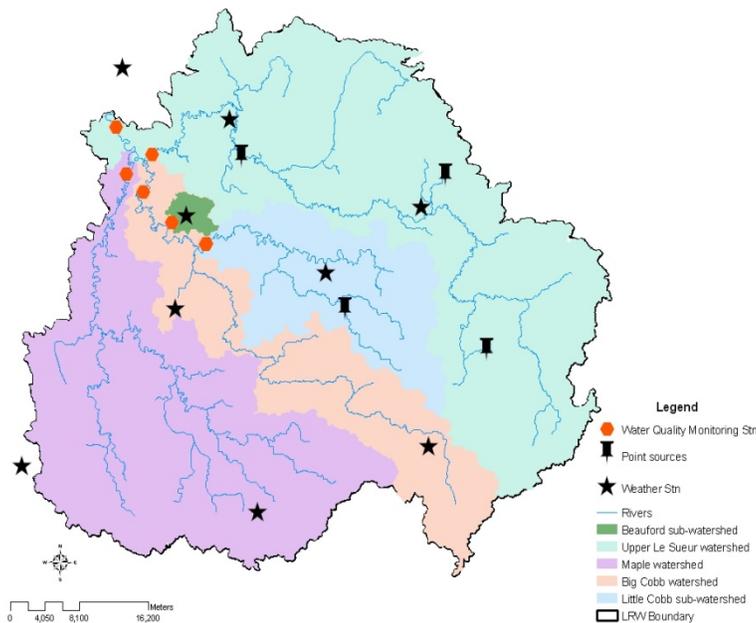


Figure 2-5: Stream flow, Water Quality and Weather Monitoring Stations in LRW

### 2.2.3. Modeling Assumptions

The following basic assumptions pertaining to hydrology (surface runoff, snow hydrology, surface and subsurface flow) were used during SWAT modeling of LRW.

- Tile drained lands in the LRW were identified based on the following assumptions:
  - No subsurface tile drainage exists in crop land with slopes greater than 6%
  - All crop land with slopes less than 2% are tile drained
  - Crop land with slopes of 2-6% and hydrologic soil group “C” or “D” are tile drained
- A two year rotation of corn and soybean was used as the baseline scenario, and as the framework for management operations over the simulation period.
- The maximum or peak rainfall intensity during a storm is calculated assuming the peak rainfall intensity is equivalent to the rainfall intensity used to calculate the peak runoff rate.
- The peak runoff rate from snow melt is estimated assuming uniformly melted snow over a 24 hour duration.

- The hydraulic gradient of stream-bed and subsurface flow is assumed to be equal to the land-surface slope.
- The average flow velocity was estimated from Manning's equation assuming a trapezoidal channel with 2:1 side slopes and a 10:1 bottom width-depth ratio.
- The hourly solar radiation was calculated by assuming that solar noon occurs at 12:00 pm local standard time.
- The depth distribution of the evaporative demand for soil layers assumed a total soil evaporation demand of 100 mm

#### **2.2.4. Identifying Critical Contributing Areas**

Soil water content is an important variable that defines the surface runoff impacts of watersheds (Hassan et al., 2007). Saturated soils within a watershed have quick response to surface runoff generation and potentially large losses of soil by erosion (Mehta et al., 2003; Betson, 1964).

The most commonly used methods for estimating soil water content can only provide point measurements due to the amount of work required to process field samples. Field measurements of soil water content are insufficient to provide continuous spatial coverage needed for land-management applications (Hassan et al., 2007). As an alternative to field measurement of soil water content, topographic indices of wetness can be used to generate spatially continuous soil water information for identifying saturation excess areas (Western et al., 1999). The compound topographic index (CTI) and stream power index (SPI) were the two hydrologic based indices that were used to estimate relative soil wetness in the LRW.

#### **Compound Topographic Index (CTI)**

The Compound Topographic Index (CTI) is a steady state wetness index, also called Topographic Wetness Index. It is a function of the slope and upstream contributing area per unit width orthogonal to the flow direction. CTI has proven to be highly correlated with several soil attributes such as horizon depth, silt percentage, organic matter content

and phosphorus (Moore et al., 1993). It is a parameter which shows the tendency of runoff dispersion in the watershed, and represents the ratio between upstream area and slope. Areas with high values for CTI tend to be depositional and are sites with saturated soil (Moore et al., 1993; Gessler et al., 1995).

CTI is calculated with the formula:

$$CTI = \ln\left(\frac{A_s}{\tan \beta}\right) \quad (2.9)$$

Where:

- $A_s$  is the specific catchment area expressed as  $m^2$  per unit width orthogonal to the flow direction, and
- $\beta$  is the slope angle expressed in radians (Gessler et al. 1995).

### **Stream Power Index (SPI)**

Stream power index is a measure of the erosive power of overland flow based on the assumption that discharge ( $q$ ) is proportional to specific catchment area ( $A_s$ ) and the slope. As specific catchment area increases, there will be concentrated surface water flow, which increases the velocity of water flow, this in turn increases the stream power index and then the erosion risk (Moore et al., 1993). The SPI is given by:

$$SPI = \ln(A_s * \tan \beta) \quad (2.10)$$

A 30m Digital Elevation Model (DEM) was used to derive the primary terrain attributes of slope and specific catchment area using the TAUDDEM approach in ARCGIS (Tarboton, 2002). These primary attributes were used to calculate the secondary terrain attributes of CTI and SPI. Finally, all CTI values over 10.5 and SPI values over 7 were used for the delineation of critical contributing areas (CCAs). These threshold values were selected as the best fit to define CCA areas after field cross checking of the developed CTI and SPI maps with the actual land features (depressional areas, wetlands, riparian areas etc).

Once the CCAs are created and the CCA soils are delineated, the threshold values of 2% land use, 1% soil and 10% slope of the sub-watershed area were used as criteria of homogeneity to incorporate CCA-HRUs into the SWAT model.

The incorporation of the CCA concept in the SWAT model was made by calibrating the available water capacity (AWC) of the soils represented by CCAs. In this process the CCA-AWC was reduced, and the effect of this reduction increased the initial curve number values in saturated areas. The changes made to AWC directly affect the runoff generated through its effect on the maximum retention parameter used in estimating the curve number.

The USDA-SCS (1972) curve number method to estimate watershed runoff is:

$$Q = \frac{(P - I_a)^2}{(P - I_a + S)} \quad (2.11)$$

Where: -  $Q$  is the accumulated runoff or rainfall excess (mm H<sub>2</sub>O)

- $P$  is the rainfall depth for the day (mm H<sub>2</sub>O)
- $I_a$  is the initial abstraction which includes surface storage, interception and infiltration prior to runoff (mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and
- $S$  is the retention parameter (mm H<sub>2</sub>O).

The runoff estimates increase with increasing curve number condition, and with increasing antecedent soil moisture. The initial abstraction,  $I_a$ , is commonly approximated by the empirical relationship  $I_a = 0.2S$ . Substituting in Eq. (1) gives:

$$Q = \frac{(P - 0.2S)^2}{(P + 0.8S)} \quad (2.12)$$

Runoff will only occur when  $P > I_a$

The retention parameter varies spatially due to changes in soils, land use, management and slope and temporally due to changes in soil water content. The retention parameter is defined as:

$$S = 25.4 \left[ \frac{1000}{CN} - 10 \right] \quad (2.13)$$

Where:  $CN$  is the curve number for the day.

The potential maximum retention  $S$  increases exponentially as the curve numbers decrease from 100 down to 30.

The daily curve number value adjusted for moisture content was calculated by rearranging Eq. (2.13) and inserting the retention parameter calculated for that moisture content:

$$CN = \left[ \frac{25400}{S + 254} \right] \quad (2.14)$$

In the SCS-curve number procedure, the overall impact of land use, management and cover conditions, and antecedent moisture conditions are represented by the initial abstraction ( $I_a = 0.2S$ ).

The curve number estimation method of Eq. (2.14) is a spatially averaged value, and cannot describe the quick surface runoff response of CCA areas. This decreases the ability of the SWAT model to accurately estimate daily time-step surface runoff from CCA areas.

The initial rate of infiltration depends on the moisture content of the soil. The maximum storage capacity,  $S$  in Eq. (14) reflects the effect of AWC prior to rainfall. Therefore, proper simulation of saturated excess areas of CCAs can be captured by adjusting the AWC of CCA soils. For this, the CTI and SPI cutoff values that represent the saturation excess areas of the LRW were determined and an adjustment to the spatial distribution of the runoff response was made by calibrating the AWC of CCA soils. The AWC of these soils was calibrated until the SWAT predicted water yield closely matched the measured water yield.

Incorporating CCAs in the LRW SWAT model was hypothesized to improve model efficiency and accuracy.

### **2.2.5. Baseflow Separation**

Baseflow discharge to streams is an important concept in many current watershed models. Baseflow recession coefficients can be used to route recharge to the stream (Arnold et al., 1995, Leavesley et al., 1983). SWAT model output results can be significantly improved by estimating the correct average annual ratio of surface runoff to baseflow. Hence, application of some type of separation techniques is essential for calibration of the SWAT model.

The baseflow separation method make use of the time-series record of stream flow to derive the baseflow signature. The separation method can be graphical, in which the points where baseflow intersects the rising and falling limbs of the quickflow response are defined, or the entire stream hydrograph can be used to derive a baseflow hydrograph through filtering. The baseflow recession constant, also called alpha factor, can be derived from the baseflow separation process. The alpha factor is one of the input parameters to the SWAT model shallow ground water simulation routine. A large alpha value is an indication of steep recession, which is indicative of rapid drainage and little storage. Conversely, a small alpha value shows very slow drainage (Arnold et al., 1995).

In the case of LRW, baseflow separation was achieved using Eckhardt's (2004) automated recursive digital filter method applied in the Web-based Hydrograph Analysis Tool (WHAT). The WHAT method application was preferred due to the fact that this system was extended to include GIS capabilities for WI, MN, OH, IL, MI, and SC (Lim and Engel, 2004; Lim et al., 2005ab) . An estimate of baseflow was made for the Beauford sub-watershed and the entire LRW. The estimated baseflow was used to calibrate the shallow groundwater flow component against measured streamflow, through adjusting the ALPHA BF factor. This analysis was performed prior to setting up and calibration of the LRW SWAT model.

### **2.2.6. Model Sensitivity Analysis, Calibration and Validation**

The heterogeneity of environmental variables such as soil types, land uses, topographic features, and weather parameters need to be considered for the effective simulation of spatially varying properties of a watershed. Spatially discrete and temporally continuous data are often not available. Satisfactory physical representation of physically based spatially distributed models, like SWAT, is limited by the amount of information available. Thus, the application of complex distributed models over large areas using insufficient input data has led to the inclusion of model sensitivity analysis, calibration and validation as methodological frameworks of the models. Muleta et al. (2005) has suggested a procedural approach of parameter screening, spatial parameterization, and parameter sensitivity analysis to reduce the SWAT model calibration parameters (Muleta and Nicklow, 2005; Vachaud and Chen, 2002).

The most sensitive input parameters were identified using the SWAT model inbuilt procedures (van Griensven, 2005). This procedure employs a One-factor-At-a-Time (OAT) sensitivity analysis methods and Latin-Hypercube (LH) random sampling. The Nash–Sutcliffe efficiency (NSE) was used as an objective function while analyzing the sensitivity of 26 flow sensitive input parameters included in the model (Table 2-6).

Once the parameters to be optimized were identified through the sensitivity analysis, the model was calibrated. Model calibration was made on a single site using a single objective function, namely, the Nash–Sutcliffe efficiency measure (Nash and Sutcliffe, 1970). A sub-watershed of the LRW, called Beauford sub-watershed, that has many years of gauged data and relatively homogeneous land use and site characteristics was used for calibration. The calibration year (year 2000) was selected based on an analysis of cumulative annual precipitation to find a year with nearly normal annual precipitation. Calibration of the parameters was made manually based on the SWAT model upper and lower boundary limits. A number of iterations were made to obtain good parameter value estimation. This was justified by validating the model over a four year period in the Beauford sub-watershed and at three major tributaries of the LRW, namely the Maple, Big Cobb and Upper Le Sueur watersheds.

Table 2-6: SWAT model parameters for the sensitivity analysis

#	PARAMETER	LOWER BOUND	UPPER BOUND	imet
1	Alpha_Bf	0	1	1
2	Biomix	0	1	1
3	Blai	0	1	1
4	Canmx	0	10	1
5	Ch_K2	0	150	1
6	Ch_N	0	1	1
7	Cn2	-25	25	2
8	Epc0	0	1	1
9	Esco	0	1	1
10	Gw_Delay	-10	10	2
11	Gw_Revap	-0.036	0.036	1
12	Gwqmn	-1000	1000	1
13	Revapmin	-100	100	1
14	Sftmp	0	5	1
15	Slope	-25	25	2
16	Ssubbsn	-25	25	2
17	Smfmn	0	10	1
18	Smfmx	0	10	1
19	Smtmp	-25	25	2
20	Sol_Al0	-25	25	2
21	Sol_Awc	-25	25	2
22	Sol_K	-25	25	2
23	Sol_Z	-25	25	2
24	Surlag	0	10	1
25	Timp	0	1	1
26	Tlaps	0	50	1

Note: Imet is the variation method during sensitivity analysis. The value of 1 indicates replacement of initial parameters by new value and 2 means adding to the initial value. The SWAT model parameter estimation, calibration and validation procedures followed those recommended by Neitsch et al. (2002). The accuracy of the SWAT model output was examined by comparing the time series outputs with monitored data over both the calibration and validation periods.

## 2.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

### 2.3.1. Identifying Critical Contributing Areas (CCAs)

#### 2.3.1.1. CCAs in the Beauford Sub-Watershed

Based on the percent watershed area threshold values for land use (2%), soil (1%) and slope (10%) as criteria to establish homogeneous HRUs, a total of 357 HRUs were created for the Beauford sub-watershed. About 29 % (559 ha) of the Beauford sub-watershed, encompassing 152 of the 357 HRUs were identified as CCA HRUs (Figures 2-6, 2-7 and 2-8).

The Beauford sub-watershed CCA-HRUs have a total of 34 soil series types, of which eight soil types accounted for 86% of the CCA area.

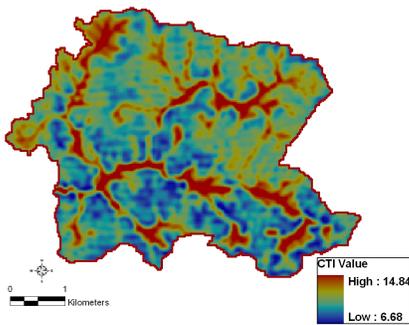


Figure 2-1: Compound Topographic Index (CTI)

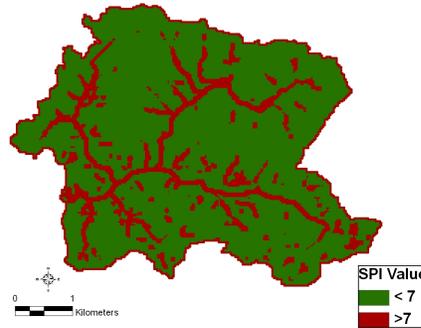


Figure 2-2: Stream power Index (SPI)

Table 2-7: CCA soils in the Beauford sub-watershed

HRU Soils	Area, ha
CCA - Lura	143.15
CCA - Minnetonka	88.56
CCA - Waldorf	84.78
CCA - Caron	52.90
CCA - Shorewood	46.07
CCA - Lester	27.29
CCA - Marna	24.32
CCA - Muskego	24.12

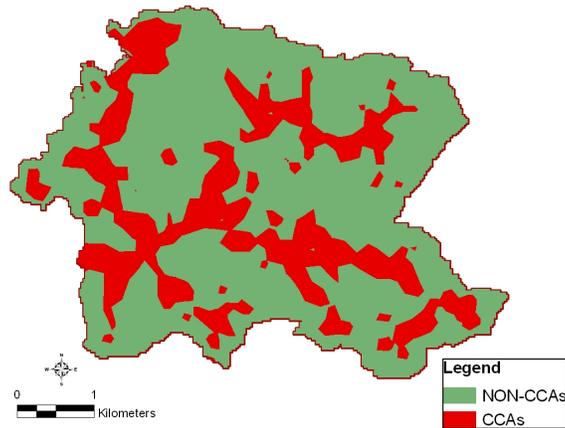


Figure 2-3: Critical contributing Areas In the Beauford Sub-Watershed

### 2.3.1.2. CCAs in the LRW

LRW has 28% (79,868 ha) of its area in the CCAs. About 73% of the CCAs are on three soil series types: Lura, Minnetonka and Waldorf. These soils are very deep and poorly drained soils that were formed in clayey glacial lacustrine sediments on glacial lake plains, and ground moraines. They have slopes of 0 to 2 percent and a saturated hydraulic conductivity of 0.15 to 0.51 cm per hour. They have seasonal saturation during the months of November to June in normal years.

Table 2-8: CCA soils in LRW

Soil Series	%
CCA - Lura	25.1
CCA - Minnetonka	15.5
CCA - Waldorf	14.9
CCA - Caron	9.3
CCA - Shorewood	8.1
CCA - Lester	4.8
CCA - Marna	4.3
CCA - Muskego	4.2

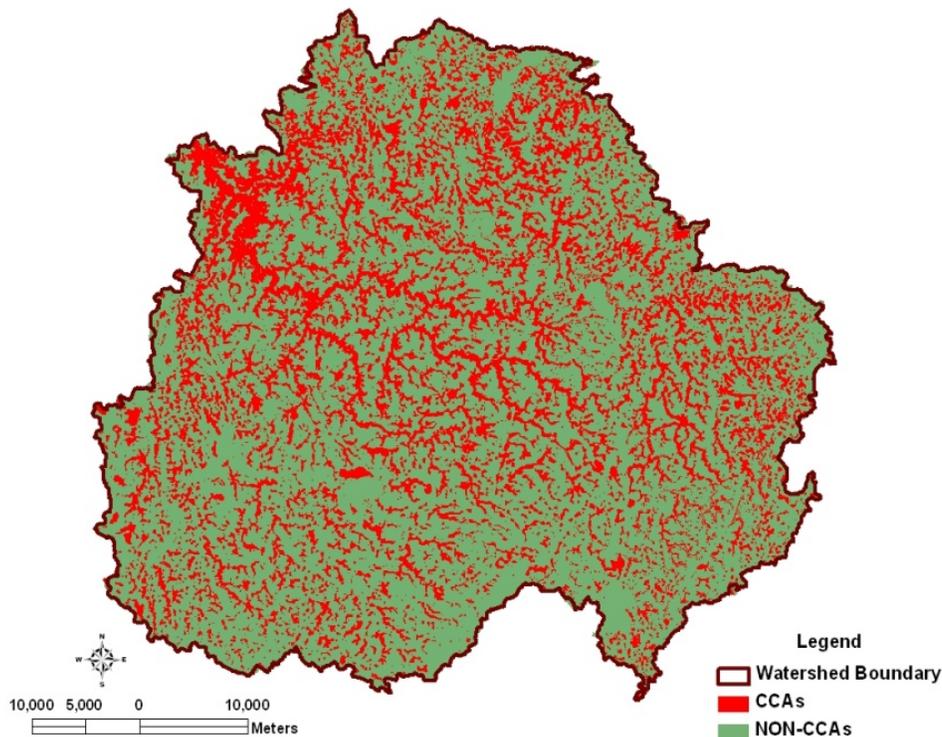


Figure 2-9: CCAs in the LRW

### 2.3.2. Modeling LRW Hydrology

The movement of surface water and associated pollutants are governed by hydrologic processes. Therefore, understanding hydrological processes is very important for assessing the environmental and economical well-being of the LRW and all receiving water bodies downstream. The Le Sueur River drains an area of 2,850 km<sup>2</sup>, and has an annual mean flow of 21 m<sup>3</sup>/sec. The three months of April to June are the peak flow season, and low flows occur during the months of Dec-Jan.

There are a number of processes controlling the spatial and temporal variability of the LRW hydrology. Baseflow separation was the primary task for separating surface and subsurface hydrological processes. This was followed by a sensitivity analysis of SWAT model input parameters.

### 2.3.2.1. Baseflow Separation

Baseflow separation for the Beauford sub-watershed showed that 49% of the total stream flow was contributed by baseflow. Eighty seven percent of the total baseflow occurred in the five months from March to July, which account for 84% of the annual stream flow. The month of May has the largest baseflow (28%), while the month of August has the smallest (0.28%)(Figure 2-10).

The baseflow contribution to the LRW is about 66% of the total flow (Figure 2-11). In the period from March to July, baseflow represented 71% of the streamflow. The same period accounts for 72% of the total stream flow. The month of April has the largest baseflow (19%), while the month of January has the smallest (0.28%). The monthly distribution of baseflow in the LRW is more consistent from month to month than in small sub-watersheds like Beauford. This is what sustains flow in the LRW throughout the year. The high baseflow of the LRW, compared to the Beauford sub-watershed is due to the large contributing area that increases baseflow, as well as snowmelt that increases hydrostatic pressure.

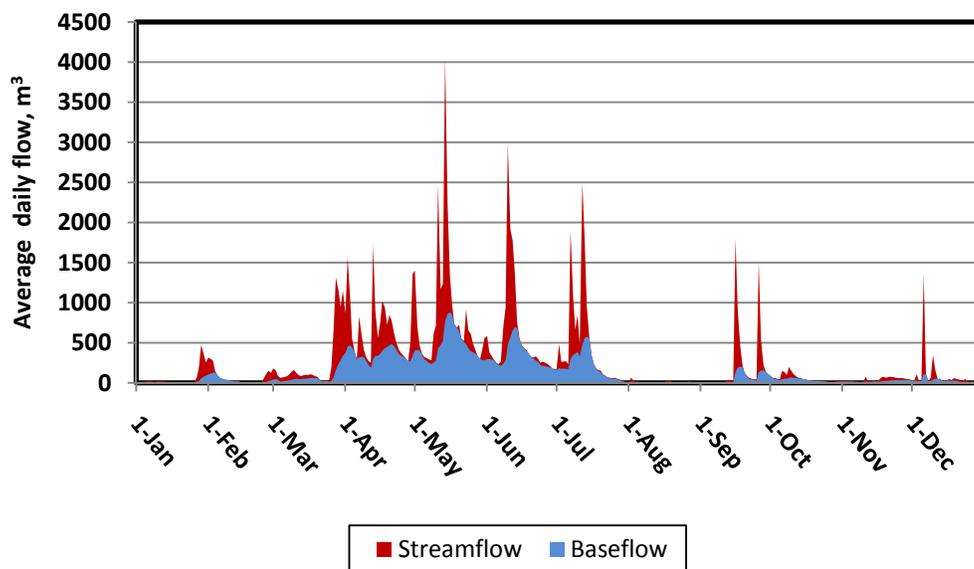


Figure 2-10: Average daily streamflow and baseflow in the Beauford sub-watershed

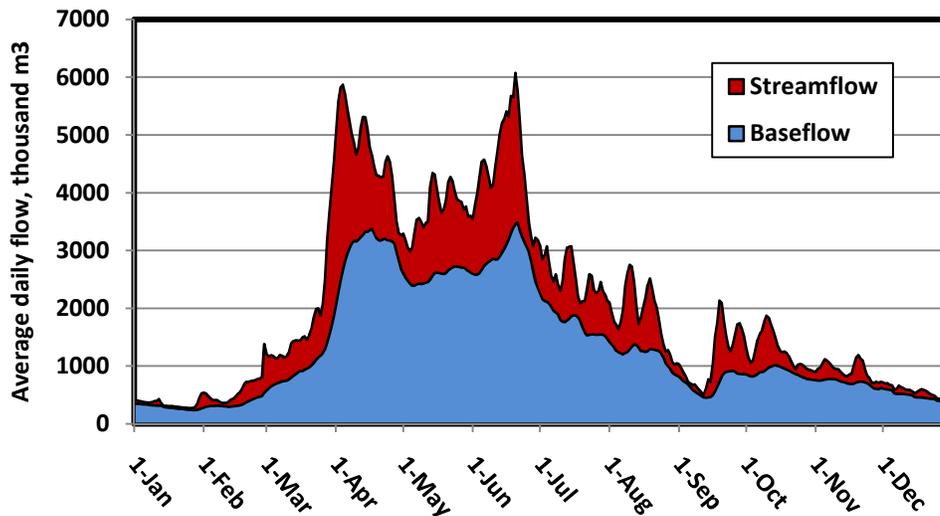


Figure 2-11: Le Sueur River average daily streamflow and baseflow

### 2.3.2.2. Model Sensitivity Analysis

As the LRW covers 285,000 ha, some systematic approach to avoid over parameterization of the SWAT model inputs is essential. A sensitivity analysis was used as a screening tool for reducing the number of parameters to be adjusted during calibration. This was further used in building and understanding the SWAT model.

The sensitivity of the different SWAT parameters pertaining to hydrology are impacted by topography, geomorphology of the landscape, size of the watershed, land-use variations and human impacts. Identifying the most sensitive parameters was made using the SWAT model inbuilt Latin-Hypercube (LH) One-factor-At-a-Time (OAT) random sampling procedures. The details of the method can be found in SWAT 2005 Advanced Workshop (van Griensven, 2005). A summary of the twelve most sensitive parameters in the Beauford and Le Sueur watersheds are shown in Table 2-9.

Table 2-9: SWAT model hydrology parameters sensitivity

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>UNIT</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Rank</b>
Ch_K2	mm/hr	Effective hyd. cond. in the main channel	1
Surlag	days	Surface lag coefficient	2
Alpha_Bf	decimal	Baseflow alpha factor	3
Esco	fraction	Soil evaporation compensation factor	4
Ch_N	[ ]	Manning coefficient for channel	5
Sol_Awc	mm/mm	Available soil water capacity	6
Blai	[ ]	Leaf area index for crop	7
Sol_Z	mm	Soil depth	8
Timp	[ ]	Snow pack temperature lag factor	9
Canmx	[ ]	Maximum canopy index	10
Cn2	[ ]	SCS curve number, antecedent moisture condition II,	11
Epc0	fraction	Plant evaporation compensation factor	12

### 2.3.2.3. Model Calibration

To minimize the complexity of model calibration, the Beauford sub-watershed was selected as a representative small sub-watershed of the LRW. Beauford sub-watershed is located at the center of the LRW and has an area of 2,096 ha. The land use in the Beauford sub-watershed is dominantly (89%) agricultural, with a two year rotation of corn and soybean. Tile drainage is extensively used on the flat 0-2% slope lands that cover 92% of the sub-watershed. The fact that this sub-watershed has no significant channel erosion and no bluffs or ravines is very important for calibration of upland hydrological and sediment transport processes in the SWAT model.

SWAT model calibration was made in the year 2000. This year was selected for having precipitation very similar to that in a normal year as shown in Figures 2-12 and 2-13.

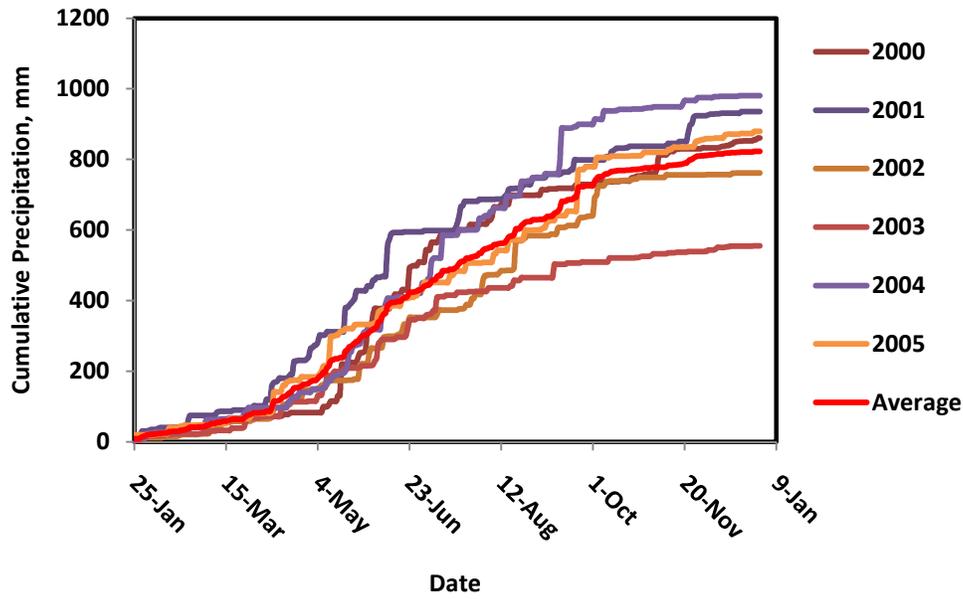


Figure 2-12: Cumulative precipitation for the period 2000-2005

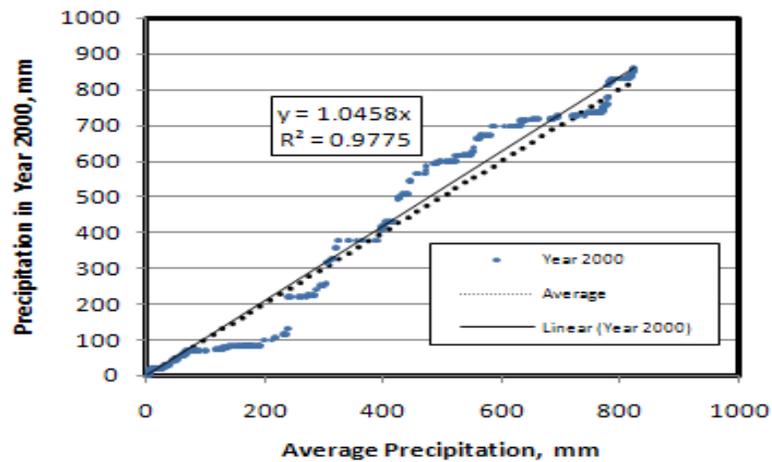


Figure 2-13: Calibration Year Precipitation vs Normal Year Precipitation

The estimated average monthly stream flow for the Beauford sub-watershed is about  $0.14 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}/\text{month}$ . The monthly flow ranges from zero in the low flow season, to  $1.58 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$  during the high flow season. Timing of occurrence of both low and peak flows as predicted by the SWAT model generally agreed with observed data. The total simulated annual flow volume for the calibration year (2000) was less than the observed by 14%, with an NSE

value of 0.77. Overall, model predictions showed very good agreement with field measured data (Figure 2-14).

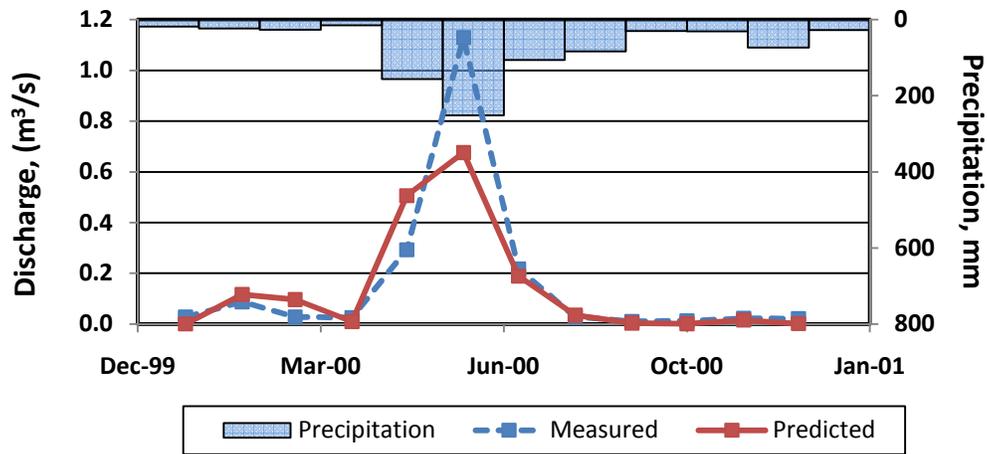


Figure 2-14: Calibration of monthly stream flow

The calibration result in Figure 2-14 was achieved after an adjustment to the twelve most sensitive model input parameters. The adjustments were made based on available measured data, knowledge about the watershed and an extensive literature review of SWAT model applications.

### **Calibration of Parameters governing the entire watershed hydrology**

The calibrated basin level hydrology parameters include:

- The snow hydrology parameters
- The surface runoff lag time (SURLAG)
- Channel hydraulic conductivity (CH\_K2)
- The soil evaporation compensation factor(ESCO)
- The plant evaporation compensation factor(EPCO)

Table 2-10: Basin level calibrated parameters for the Beauford and Le Sueur watersheds.

SWAT variable	Description	min	max	Default Value	Calibrated Value
SFTMP	Snowfall temperature [°C]	-5	+5	1	0.0
SMTMP	Snow melt base temperature [°C]	-5	+5	0.5	4.0
TIMP	Snow pack temperature lag factor [-]	0	1	1	0.85
SMFMN	Melt factor for snow on December 21st [mm H <sub>2</sub> O/°C day]	0	10	4.5	2
SMFMX	Melt factor for snow on June 21st [mm H <sub>2</sub> O/°C day]	0	10	4.5	4
SNOCOVMX	Minimum snow water content that corresponds to 100% snow cover [mm]	0	500	1	40
SNO50COV	Fraction of snow volume represented by SNOCOVMX that corresponds to 50% snow cover [-]	0	1	0.5	0.3
ESCO	Soil evaporation coefficient	0	1	0.95	0.87
EPCO	Plant evaporation coefficient	0	1	1	0.89
SURLAG	The surface runoff lag time	1	24	4	1
CH_K2	Channel hydraulic conductivity	-0.01	500		0.05

The snow pack temperature lag factor, TIMP, that controls the previous day snow pack temperature effect on the current day's snow pack temperature is the most sensitive parameter of all the snow hydrology parameters. The final calibrated value of TIMP was 0.85. This indicates that snow pack temperature is mostly influenced by current day air temperature. The calibrated values for the rest of the snow parameters and basin level inputs are shown in Table 2-10.

Table 2-11: Calibration of Parameters governing Surface and Subsurface Hydrology

Parameter	Range	Default Value	Final Calibrated Value
Curve Number (CN)	±10	-	-6
Soil available water capacity (SOIL_AWC)	0-1	-	variable
Base-flow alpha factor, days (ALPHA_BF)	0.1-1.0	0.025	0.2
Groundwater revap. coefficient, (GW_REVAP)	0.02-0.2	0.02	0.02
Groundwater delay time, days (GW_DELAY)	0-100	40	20
Time to drain soil to field capacity, hours (TDRAIN)		24	48
Drain tile lag time, hours (GDRAIN)	-	96	96
Depth to subsurface drain, mm (DDRAIN)	-	1200	1200

#### 2.3.2.4. Model Validation

Validation of stream flow was conducted both in the Beauford and the entire LRW. The calibrated model parameters for the Beauford watershed were considered transferable to the LRW due to the fact that model performance in the Beauford sub-watershed was good.

Validation of monthly flow over the years 2001 - 2006 in the Beauford watershed gave an NSE of 0.89. Validation in the LRW from 1994 to 2006 showed good agreement between measured and predicted monthly flow, with an NSE of 0.73. These results indicate that the SWAT model can accurately simulate the hydrology of the LRW (Figure 2-15 and Figure 2-16).

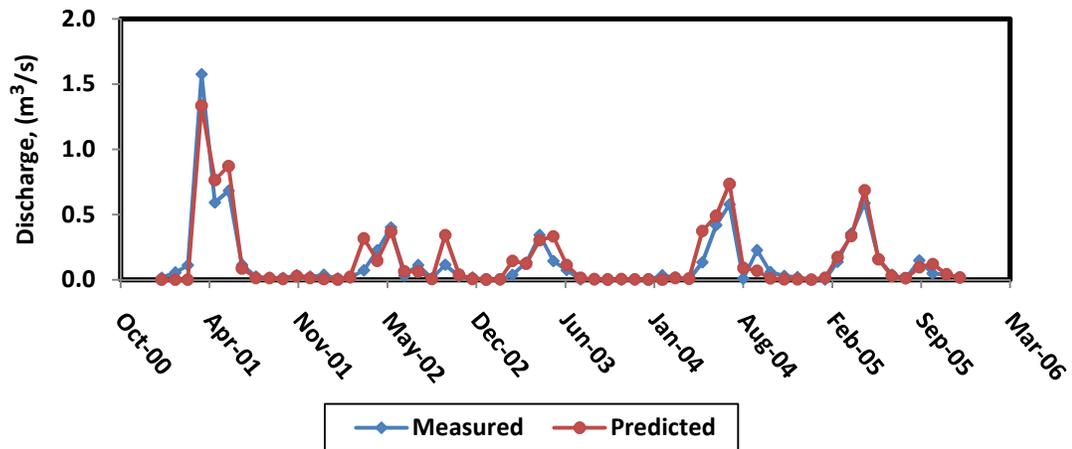


Figure 2-15: Validation of monthly flow in the Beauford sub-watershed

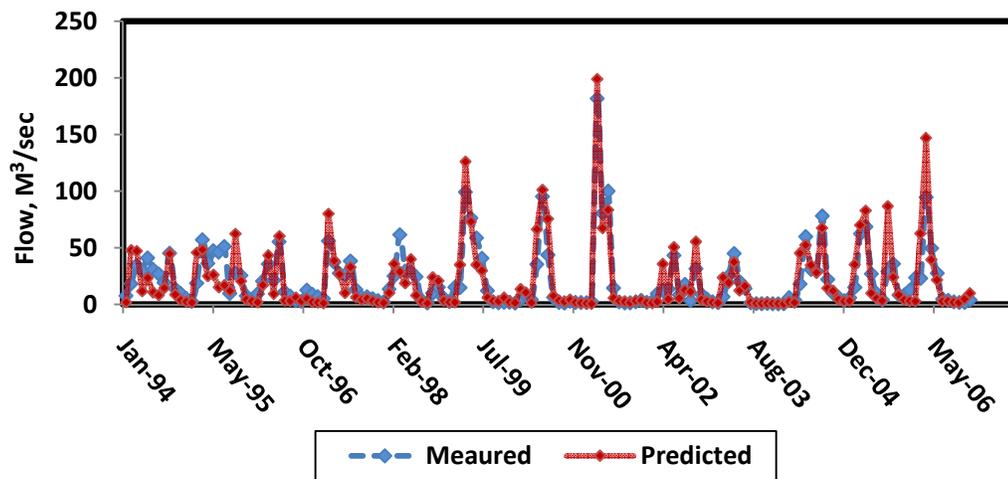


Figure 2-16: Validation of monthly flow in the LRW

The predicted average annual flows in the Beauford (Figure 2-17) and Le Sueur (Figure 2-18) watersheds were very accurate. The model over predicted annual flow by 10% in the Beauford sub-watershed. Over the simulation period from 1994 to 2006, there was a 6% under prediction in some years and a 7% over prediction in other years, indicating no systematic error. The predicted annual flows in the Beauford and LRW have NSE values of 0.93 and 0.7, respectively (Figures 2-17 & Figure 2-18).

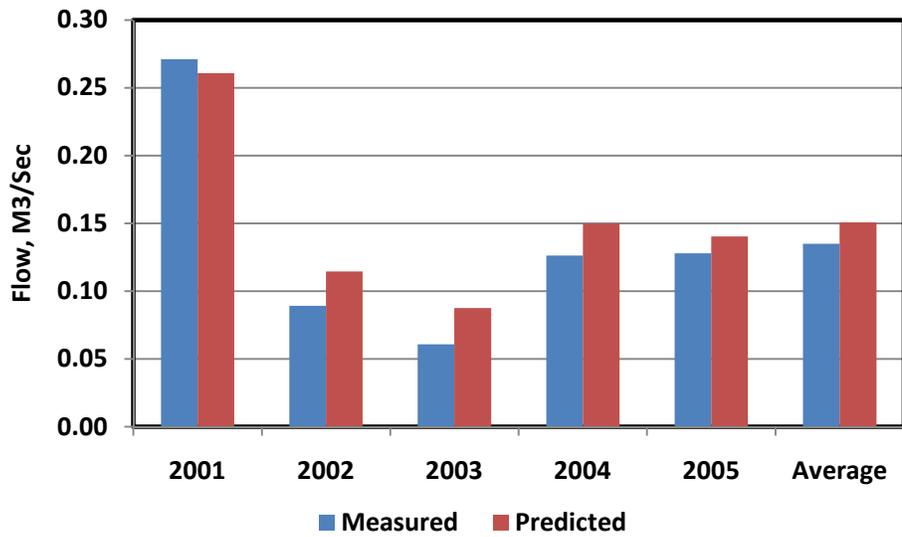


Figure 2-4: Annual flow in Beauford sub-watershed

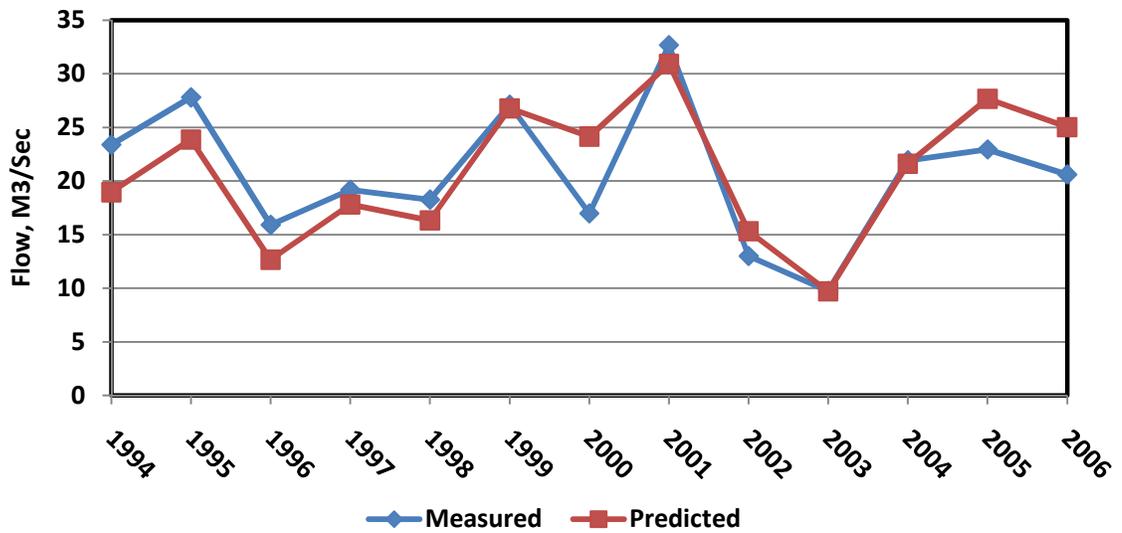


Figure 2-18: Annual flow in the LRW

### 2.3.2.5. Water Budget

The principle of conservation of mass was applied to compute the annual water budget in the LRW.

$$\Delta SW = P - (ET + tileQ + surfQ + gwQ + daqQ) \quad (15)$$

Where  $\Delta SW$  is the change in soil water storage, P is the total annual precipitation, ET the evapotranspiration, tileQ is the tile flow, surfQ is the surface runoff flow, gwQ is the groundwater flow and daqQ is the deep aquifer recharge.

ET accounts for 71% of the water budget, the largest of all components. Tile flow is the second largest component, accounting for 13% of the water budget. Surface runoff accounts for another 11% of the water budget. Available water holding capacity of the LRW soils varies considerably, the average annual soil water storage is estimated at about 245 mm. The average soil water content ranges from 227 mm to 273 mm over the whole year, except the three months of July, August and September. In those three months the soil water content gets as low as 172 mm due to the high evapotranspiration (Figure 2-19 and 2-20 and Table 2-12).

The annual water yield of LRW is 230 mm. About 47% of the water yield is contributed by tile drainage, 38% is from surface runoff, 11% is groundwater flow and 4% is lateral flow. The months of March to June are the period in which over 70% of the surface runoff, tile flow and total water yield of LRW occurs. April is the month in which the water yield, surface runoff and tile flow reach the maximum peak point (Figure 2-20).

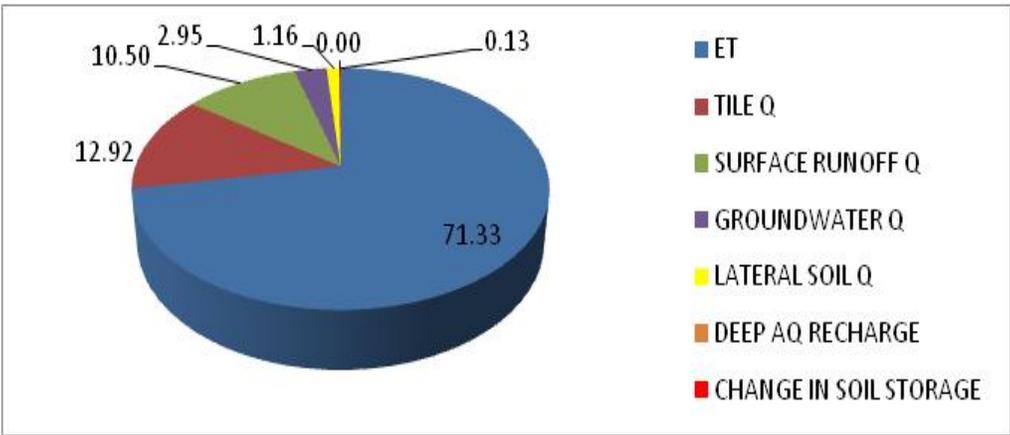


Figure 2-19: Average annual water budget

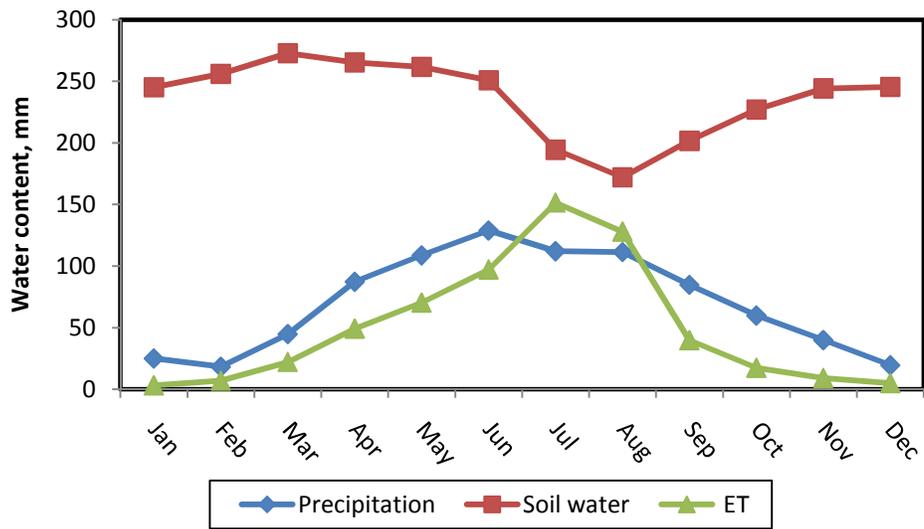
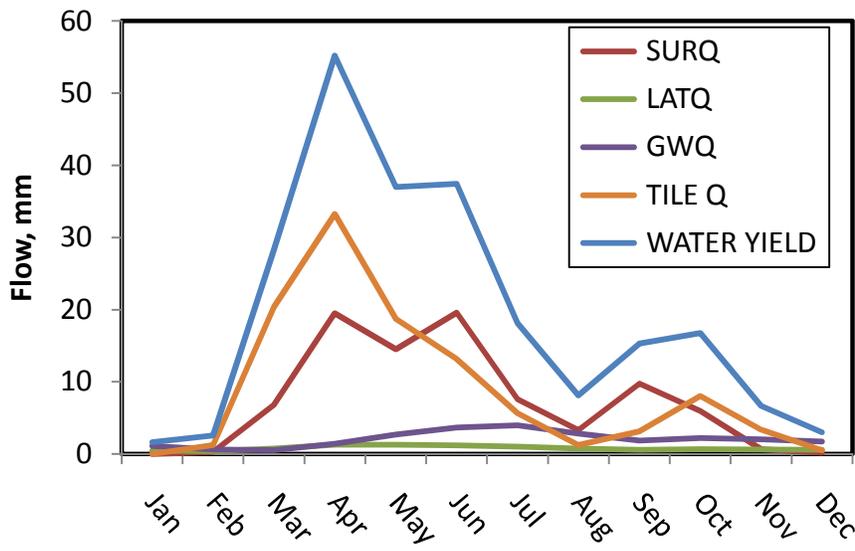


Figure 2-20: Average monthly distribution of the water balance components (1994-2006)

Table 2-12: Water budget components of the LRW (1994-2006).

YEAR	PREC	SURQ	LATQ	GWQ	TILEQ	SW	Δ	ET	WYLD
1994	854.7	60.8	11.1	25.6	111.1	262.1	0	641.3	207.3
1995	868.1	56.9	12.2	32.5	157.1	265.3	3.2	597.4	256.9
1996	799.9	48.8	9.8	17.6	69	262	-3.3	597.8	144.6
1997	687	64.3	10.1	21.1	100.4	225.3	-36.7	574.3	195
1998	809.8	69.8	8.4	20.4	81.6	253.4	28.1	598.3	178.8
1999	897.9	99.6	11.4	31.9	154.6	234.8	-18.5	607.2	296.2
2000	923.4	144.8	8.7	27.6	87.2	224.6	-10.3	596.6	267.1
2001	866.1	159	9.8	24.1	145.9	236	11.4	561.7	337.1
2002	805.9	64.4	8.4	22.7	79.3	255	19.1	609.5	173.6
2003	589.5	22.8	6.6	17.2	64.6	149	-106	567	110.7
2004	980.7	127.4	7.8	32.5	74.9	264.6	115.6	619.1	241.3
2005	1001.8	136.9	11	29.1	132	281.8	17.2	634.5	307.5
2006	845.1	91.8	11.1	20.4	155	276	-5.7	591.9	276.5
Avg	840.8	88.2	9.7	24.8	108.7	245.4	1.1	599.7	230.2

**Note:**

PRECP= Precipitation, SURFQ= Surface runoff, LATQ= Lateral flow, GWQ= groundwater flow, TILEQ= Tile flow, SW= Soil water storage, ET= Evapotranspiration, WYLD= Water yield

The major water yielding areas of the LRW are concentrated in the western portion of the LRW. About 36% of the watershed area has an annual water yield of over 250 mm, and the rest less than 250 mm. The source areas and their relative contributions are shown in Table 2-13 and Figure 2-21 below.

Table 2-13: Water yield versus areal coverage

WYLD, mm	Area coverage, %	WYLD Contribution, %
> 350	2	3
250-350	34	41
200-250	45	43
131-200	17	13
< 131	2	0

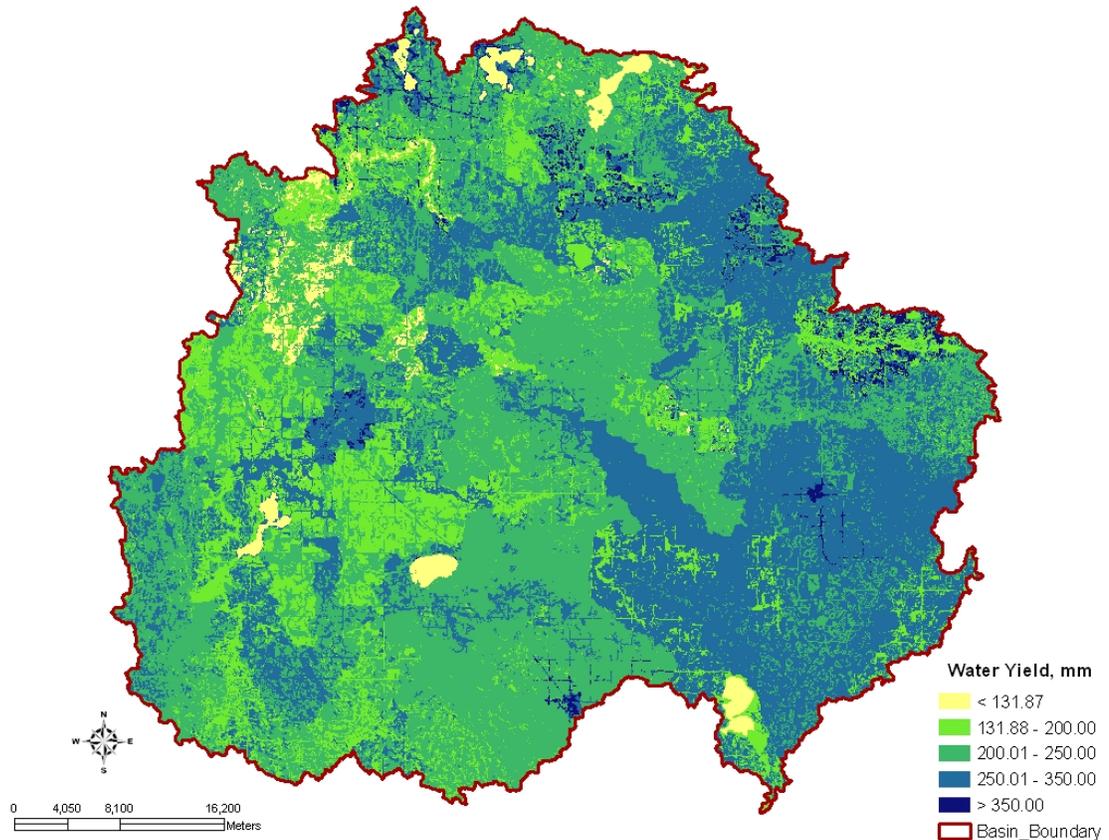


Figure 2-21: Spatial Variation in Water Yield in the LRW

### 2.3.2.6. Evaluation of Effects of CCA-HRUs on Watershed Hydrology

HRUs delineated using the concept of critical contributing areas (CCA-HRUs) had NSE values that were 2% better for monthly and annual water yield than the non-CCA model. The CCA-HRU approach had a 7 mm increase in the overall water yield, a 5.3% increase in surface runoff and a 2.8% increase in groundwater flow. Tile Q and lateral flow decreased by 4.7% and 0.7%, respectively, with the CCA model. These results show that the two modeling approaches produced roughly similar results (Table 2-14 & Table 2-15). As measured data for each hydrologic component are not available for these watersheds, further research is recommended to further evaluate the utility of the CCA modeling approach.

Table 2-14: Average monthly and annual stream flow using standard HRU and the modified CCA-HRU

Time	Average Stream Flow, mm				
	Measured	Simulated			
		HRU Based	NSE	CCA-HRU Based	NSE
Monthly	20.33	20.39	0.70	20.84	0.72
Annual	269.49	264.36	0.66	270.71	0.68

Table 2-15: Average annual water balance components for the standard HRU and the modified CCA-HRU approach

Water balance component	Default HRU	Modified HRU
	Depth, mm	
PRECIP + SNOW MELT	840.8 (100%)	840.8 (100%)
ET	612.8 (72.9%)	599.7 (71.3%)
TILE Q	148.1 (17.6%)	108.7 (12.9)
SURFACE RUNOFF Q	60.2 (7.2%)	88.2 (10.5%)
GROUNDWATER (SHAL AQ) Q	1.67 (0.2%)	24.8 (3.0%)
LATERAL SOIL Q	16.35 (1.9%)	9.7 (1.2%)
DEEP AQ RECHARGE	0.1 (0.01%)	0.4 (0.1%)
CHANGE IN SOIL STORAGE	0.7 (0.1%)	8 (1.0%)

Water budgets for other SWAT studies in the Midwestern US are presented here for comparison (Table 2-16). Green et al. (2006) found that 80% of the water yield in a tile drained watershed in north central Iowa was from tile flow and subsurface flow. Studies by Gassman et al. (2006) and Jha et al. (2007) are in good agreement with the Le Sueur SWAT model results. However, Jha et al. (2007) underestimate tile flow, although 51% of their watershed is under tile drainage.

Table 2-16: SWAT modeling study water budget results for the region

Component	Depth (mm)			
	*1	*2	*3	LRW
Precipitation	812.7	840.2	768	840.8
**Surface Runoff	118.6 (49%)	104.6 (45%)	38.1 (20%)	87 (37.8%)
**Tile Flow	89.9 (37%)	21.2 (9%)	136.4 (71%)	108.67 (47.2%)
**Groundwater & lateral subsurface flow	34.1 (24%)	112.5 (48%)	17.9 (9%)	34.54 (15%)
***Evapotranspiration	562.3 (69%)	598.3 (71%)	569.2 (74%)	599.7 (71.3%)
***Water Yield	241.0 (29.7%)	235.1 (28%)	192.4 (25.1%)	230.21 (27.4%)

Note

\*1 Boone River watershed in North-Central Iowa. (Gassman et al., 2006)

\*2 Racoon River watershed West-Central Iowa. (Jha et al., 2007)

\*3 South Fork watershed in North-Central Iowa. (Green et al., 2006)

\*\* Percent of the water yield

\*\*\*Percent of the precipitation

## 2.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

The LRW SWAT hydrologic model has two major components, a surface water component, and a subsurface component which simulates water flow in the soil water continuum that includes tile flow, lateral flow and groundwater flow. The study involved sensitivity analysis, parameterization and calibration of model input parameters in a selected sub-watershed of the LRW, called the Beauford sub-watershed. The calibrated input parameters were transferred to the LRW, and the SWAT model outputs were validated over the years 1994-2006. In order to test model efficiency, the goodness of fit between the measured and simulated water yield were evaluated using the Nash–Sutcliffe model efficiency coefficient.

SWAT predicted monthly discharge from 1994-2006 has high accuracy with NSE values of 0.77 and 0.73 in the Beauford sub-watershed and LRW, respectively. The average annual water yield of LRW during this period was 230 mm. About 47% of the water yield is contributed by tile drainage, 38% from surface runoff, 11% groundwater flow and 4% lateral flow. The calibrated hydrology parameters at the scale of the Beauford sub-watershed were transferred to the entire LRW. The incorporation of critical contributing areas (CCA-HRUs) produced slightly better model efficiencies than the non CCA model in both the monthly and annual water yield.

The months of March to June are the period in which over 70% of the surface runoff, tile flow and the total water yield occurs in the LRW. April is the month in which the water yield, surface runoff and tile flow reach maximum peak values. ET accounts for 71% of the water budget, the largest of all components. Tile flow is the second largest component, accounting for 13% of the water budget. Surface runoff accounts for another 11% of the water budget. The average annual soil water storage of the LRW is estimated at about 245 mm. The average soil water content ranges from 227 mm to 273 mm in all months, except the months of July, August and September. In those three months months the soil water content gets as low as 172 mm due to the high evapotranspiration.

**Chapter 3 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER  
WATERSHED SEDIMENT SOURCE AREAS AND  
TRANSPORT PROCESSES**

## **SYNOPSIS**

The Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW) generates 302,000 t/yr of sediment which has resulted in turbidity impairment of several river reaches in the watershed. Unless some mitigation measures are taken, the current excessive sediment flux from LRW can destroy aquatic habitats, biotic communities and aesthetic qualities of the LRW itself and all receiving water bodies downstream, including Lake Pepin. Our objective in this research was to use the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) to quantify the spatial and temporal sediment loadings of the LRW. The ability of the model to represent soil erosion, sediment transport and deposition processes in the LRW was assessed through the calibration and validation processes.

The Beauford sub-watershed, at the center of LRW, was selected as a representative watershed for calibration because its sediment loss arises only from upland erosion processes – there are no eroding streambanks, bluffs or ravines. Upland hydrologic and sediment variables obtained by calibrating SWAT in the Beauford sub-watershed could be transferred to all other upland sub-watersheds in the LRW. In contrast, SWAT model sediment channel parameters such as the peak rate adjustment factor for sediment routing in the main channel (PRF) and the linear parameter for calculating the channel sediment routing (SPCON) were found to be very different in the Beauford and Le Sueur River mainstem watersheds. A sensitivity analysis of SWAT channel sediment parameters in combination with upland hydrology and sediment parameters from the calibrated model showed that sediment contributions from upland regions of the LRW range from 13% to 30%, the remaining 70% to 87% is from channel sources. The effectiveness and water quality impacts of best management practices (BMPs) was also evaluated so as to identify the best ones for conservation planning and water quality improvement. Implementation of conservation tillage, filter strips and rye cover crop BMPs decreased upland sediment losses from 8% to 54%.

## **3.1. INTRODUCTION**

### **3.1.1. Problem Statement**

The Minnesota River is impaired for suspended solids which affects turbidity. The annual average load of suspended solids transported by Minnesota River to the Mississippi River is estimated to be about 625 million kg (Senjem et al., 1996). According to the estimates of Kelley et al. (2000), sediment loadings of the Minnesota River to the Mississippi River and Lake Pepin have increased annually by an average increment of 8% over the last 160 years. Roughly 85% of the sediment entering Lake Pepin arises from the Minnesota River Basin. The annual sedimentation rate in the upper portion of Lake Pepin in recent years is about 40 mm. The excessive sediment loadings, mainly from the Minnesota River basin, have impacted water quality in Lake Pepin. Consequently, the lake has been listed as being impaired for nutrients and turbidity since 2004 (MPCA, 2009).

The Le Sueur River watershed accounts for about 7% of the area, but 53% of the TSS leaving the Minnesota River Basin (Water Resources Center, 2008). The Le Sueur River Watershed transports over 200 mg/L of sediment to Minnesota River, higher than all other major watersheds in the basin. Because the Le Sueur River watershed is impaired for sediment, a Total Maximum Daily Load is being established, and the sources of sediment are being evaluated.

Sekely et al. (2002) showed that the Blue Earth River watershed, which is adjacent to the LRW and has very similar geology, soils and landscapes, generates roughly 44% of its sediment load from slumping river bluffs. Based on this research, we hypothesize that sediment loads in the LRW are dominated by channel sources of sediment, including bluffs, eroding stream banks and ravines. Also there is a wide range of reported data on channel erosion contributions; a study of the sediment source areas for the LRW is an important task to be conducted as part of this modeling study. Studies in the Midwestern United States have reported large sediment contributions from channel sources: Odgaard (1987) has shown 30- 40% of sediment in the East Nishnabotna and

Des Moines Rivers of Iowa are contributed by channel sources, 50% in two Illinois streams (Wdlun and Hebel 1982), and 65% in the Lawrence River (Rondeau et al., 2000).

### **3.1.2. Objectives**

The general objective of the sediment modeling component of the LRW study was to use the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) to estimate the spatial and temporal patterns of soil erosion in the Le Sueur River Watershed. The contribution of upland areas to sediment loads at various locations within the LRW was quantified. Estimation of the contributions from channel sources of sediment, including river bluffs, ravines and stream banks were made.

Specific study objectives include:

- i. Evaluate ability of SWAT model to simulate erosion, deposition and sediment transport dynamics in the LRW
- ii. Identify factors that influence erosion processes
- iii. Evaluate spatial patterns of upland sources of sediment
- iv. Simulate seasonal and long term sediment yields
- v. Evaluate relative importance of different best management practices to reduce sediment loss

### **3.1.3. Soil Erosion and Sedimentation Processes**

Soil erosion and sedimentation are two separate, but interrelated processes at different stages in the loss of soil from upland regions. Soil erosion is the removal of soil by water, wind, ice, or gravity. Soil erosion by water involves the detachment, transport and deposition of soil particles by the erosive forces of rainfall and snowmelt runoff. This can be in the form of splash, sheet, rill, or gully erosion (Summer et al., 1998).

Soil particles will detach and then splash into the air as raindrops strike the soil. Rain water infiltrates into the soil at a rate controlled by the intensity of the water hitting the surface and infiltration capacity of the soil profile. When soil becomes saturated, surface ponding of water will be initiated. When surface accumulated water is sufficiently deep, it induces surface runoff or overland flow that transports dissolved or suspended soil particles, causing the process of sediment entrainment or transport to the outlet of a watershed (Nichols et al., 2003; Julien, 1998).

Changes in stream channel factors, such as stream geometry (width, depth, slope etc), can reduce flow velocity causing some of the soil particles to be deposited as flows lose their capacity to carry the sediment. Transport capacity is the maximum amount of sediment that a given flow can carry without net deposition. Detachment capacity and transport capacity are interrelated, and it is their interaction that controls the patterns and magnitudes of both erosion and deposition (Slaymaker, 2003). In any given watershed, one of the two dominant processes (transport or detachment), will become the limiting factor for soil erosion. When sediment production or detachment capacity is lower, there will be transport of available sediment which is generally referred to as “detachment-limited erosion” (Van Rompaey et al., 2003). In contrast, if detachment capacity is significantly greater than transport capacity, then the amount and magnitude of soil erosion is limited by the sediment transport capacity of runoff, referred to as “transport-limited erosion” (Harmon and Doe, 2001).

Sediment-transport rates are a function of flow hydraulics, bed composition, and upstream sediment supply. Sediment yield and sediment load are the most commonly used terms to describe the watershed response to soil erosion. Sediment yield is the amount of eroded soil that is delivered to a point in the watershed that is usually remote from the origin of the detached soil particles. It includes the erosion from slopes, channels, and mass wasting (slumping, sliding, falling soils), minus the sediment that is deposited after it is eroded but before it reaches the point of interest (Renard et al., 1997). Sediment yield is not available as a direct measurement but can be estimated by

using a sediment delivery ratio (SDR), which is the ratio of sediment delivered at a location in the stream system to the gross erosion from the drainage area above that point.

$$SDYLD = SDR * Eg \quad (3.1)$$

Where: SDYLD is the sediment yield (tons)

SDR is the sediment delivery ratio (fraction)

Eg = Gross erosion (tons)

The SDR generally decreases with increasing watershed area. The estimation of SDR can be site specific using the relationship of sediment rating curve to flow duration. This method can be used for small sub-watersheds. In the case of large watersheds there are commonly used empirical relationships which relate SDR to the watershed area. Vanoni (1975) suggested the use of an area power function (Vanoni, 1975).

$$SDR = 0.42S^{-0.125} \quad (3.2)$$

where A is the watershed area in square miles.

Old versions of the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) model estimated SDR using a runoff factor (Arnold et al., 1996; Ouyang and Bartholic, 1997). The primary form of the SWAT-SDR model was:

$$SDR = ((q_p / r_p) / (0.782845 + 0.217155 Q / R ))^{0.56} \quad (3.3)$$

where  $q_p$  = the peak runoff rate in mm/hr.

$r_p$  = the peak rainfall rate in mm/hr

R = the rainfall in mm.

Q = the runoff volume in mm.

The amount of sediment carried per unit time is called the sediment load. Hewlett, (1982) divided sediment load into three categories:

- i. Suspended Load: Containing organic and inorganic particulate matter that is suspended in and carried by moving water.

- ii. Dissolved Load: All organic and inorganic material carried in solution by moving water.
- iii. Bed load: Coarse materials such as gravel, stones, and boulders that move along the bottom of the channel.

### **3.1.4. Models of Soil Erosion and Sediment Transport**

Nearing (1994) defined soil erosion modeling as a process of mathematically describing soil particle detachment, transport and deposition on land surfaces (Nearing and Lane , 1994; and Lopes, 1994). Modeling soil erosion and sediment transport of a watershed can be used for three basic reasons (Jain and Kothyari, 2000):

- i. To assess soil loss for conservation planning and regulation. Application of watershed models can provide a quantitative and consistent approach to estimate soil erosion and sediment yield under the conditions of applications of different management practices or changes in land use.
- ii. To understand erosion processes and their interactions and for setting research priorities
- iii. Physically based models can predict where and when erosion is occurring, thus helping to target efforts to reduce erosion

The most important difference among soil erosion models that estimate soil erosion and sedimentation is the level of complexity in which they represent the processes of soil erosion, entrainment, detachment and transport of soil particles . Watershed models that can simulate soil erosion and sediment yield can be grouped into three broad categories: empirical, conceptual and physically-based models.

The empirical soil erosion models are statistical in nature and usually establish relationships between annual soil erosion and precipitation, vegetation cover, soil types, topography, land use types, tillage styles and conservation measures. Due to the

simplicity in their structure, those models are easy to apply (Merritt et al., 2003). However, the fact that the model coefficients are developed by calibrating on measurements taken on specific localized areas, they fail to fully simulate in other areas (Nearing and Lane, 1994; and Lopes, 1994). Models of this category include Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) (Wischmeier and Smith, 1965), the Modified Universal Soil Loss Equation (MUSLE) (Williams, 1975), or the Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE)(Renard et al., 1997).

Conceptual models employ the continuity equation and make use of grid cells to describe spatial variations in erosion and deposition. Many of the conceptual models developed in the 1970's, including CREAMS (USDA, 1980), ANSWERS (Beasley et al., 1980) overcame the limitations of the USLE. Nevertheless, these models make use of USLE factors. Since USLE factors, such as C and K, do not change with time to accommodate differences in season, models that use static values of C and K are limited to average annual erosion estimates. The main weakness of conceptual models is their poor physical description of basic sediment processes (Elliot, et al., 1994).

Modeling efforts over the last two decades have focused on the development of physically based erosion models that have the required routines to capture spatial variability of soil erosion processes. Among those type of models are the Water Erosion Prediction Equation, WEPP (Nearing et al., 1989), European Soil Erosion model, EUROSEM (Morgan et al., 1998) and Soil and Water Assessment Tool, SWAT (Neitsch et al., 2005).

**Table 3-1: Erosion and sediment transport models (Adapted from Merritt et al., 2003)**

Model	Type of model	Application	Scale	Input/output	Reference
AGNPS	Conceptual	Water quality	Small catchment	Runoff volume; peak rate, SS, N, P, and COD concentrations	(Young, 1987)
EMSS	Conceptual	Water quality	Catchment	Low Output: runoff, sediment loads, nitrogen loads and phosphorus loads	(Vertessy et al., 2001; Watson et al., 2001)
HSPF	Conceptual	Water quality	Catchment	Runoff, flow rate, sediment load, nutrient concentration	(Johanson et al., 1980)
IQQM	Conceptual	Water quality	Catchment	Moderate Output: many pollutants including nutrients, sediments, dissolved oxygen, salt, algae.	(DLWC, 1995)
LASCAM	Conceptual	Water quality	Catchment	Runoff, sediment, salt fluxes	(Viney and Sivapalan, 1999)
SWRRB	Conceptual	Water quality	Catchment	streamflow, sediment, nutrient and pesticide yields	(US EPA, 1994)
USLE	Empirical		Hillslope	erosion	Wischmeier and Smith (1978)
IHACRES-WQ	Empirical/ Conceptual	Water quality	Catchment	Low Output: runoff, sediment and nutrients	(Jakeman et al., 1999)
SEDNET	Empirical/ Conceptual	Erosion	Catchment	Moderate Output: suspended sediment, relative contributions from overland flow, gully and bank erosion processes	(Prosser et al., 2001)
ANSWERS	Physical	Water quality	Small catchment	Sediment, nutrients	(Beasley et al., 1980)
CREAMS	Physical	Water quality	field 40–400 ha	Erosion; deposition	(Knisel, 1980)
GUEST	Physical	Erosion	Plot	Runoff; sediment concentration	(Rose et al., 1997)
LISEM	Physical	Erosion	Small catchment	Runoff; sediment yield	(De Roo and Jetten, 1999; Takken et al., 1999)
PERFECT	Physical	Erosion	Field	Runoff, erosion, crop yield	(Littleboy et al., 1992)
TOPOG	Physical	Erosion	Hillslope	HighOutput: water logging, erosion hazard, CSIRO Land and Water, TOPOG solute transport Homepage	(Gutteridge Haskins and Davey (1991), )
WEPP	Physical	Erosion	catchment	Runoff; sediment characteristics; form of sediment loss	(Laflen et al., 1991)
MIKE-11	Physical	In-stream transport	Catchment	Sediment yield, runoff	(Hanley et al., 1998)

### 3.1.5. Soil Erosion and Sediment Transport in SWAT model

The SWAT model soil erosion algorithm uses the Modified Universal Soil Loss Equation (MUSLE) equation to estimate the total amount of sediment delivered to the stream network within a watershed (Williams, 1975). The MUSLE model was developed by modifying the Universal Soil Loss Equation (USLE) developed by Wischmeier and Smith (1965). Therefore, a clear understanding of MUSLE and its components is needed for appropriate parameterization of the LRW sediment modeling. The SWAT model calculates sediment yield for each HRU and every single day with rainfall and runoff using the following MUSLE equation:

$$SYLD = 11.8 * (Q_{surf} * qp)^{0.56} * K * LS * C * P * CFRG \quad (3.4)$$

where SYLD is the sediment yield to the stream network in metric tons,  $Q_{surf}$  is the surface runoff volume in mm, qp is the peak flow rate in  $m^3/s$ , K is the soil erodibility factor which is a soil property available from the Soil Survey Geographic (SSURGO) data, LS is the slope length and gradient factor, C is the cover management factor and can be derived from land cover data, P is the erosion control practice factor which is a field specific value and CFRG is the coarse fragment factor. The SWAT model no longer uses a sediment delivery ratio to calculate sediment yield at the HRU level.

In the MUSLE equation, the peak surface runoff rate, total volume of runoff and the USLE-C factor can vary over time as a result of changes in the watershed to be modeled. SWAT is a continuous simulation model, so it constantly updates antecedent soil moisture and the curve number to capture temporal and spatial variations in surface runoff, and eventually to predict the sediment yield. Details of the surface runoff ( $Q_{surf}$ ) calculation methods used in SWAT model were explained in Chapter 2.

## Sediment Channel Routing

The SWAT model applies Bagnold's (1977) stream power concept as modified by Williams (1980) for sediment routing (Bagnold, 1977);(Williams, 1980). The routing of sediment involves channel deposition and re-entrainment, and bed degradation. The continuity equation is applied to volumes and concentrations of inflow and outflow. Bed degradation is adjusted with USLE soil erodibility and cover factors, and deposition depends on particle fall velocity. Details of each process are shown below:

### Flow rate ( $q_{ch}$ ) and Velocity ( $V_{ch}$ ) in a channel,

The rate and velocity of flow in a channel is calculated by using Manning's equation.

$$q_{ch} = \frac{A_{ch} * R_{ch}^{2/3} * slp_{ch}^{1/2}}{n} \quad (3.5)$$

$$V_{ch} = \frac{R_{ch}^{2/3} * slp_{ch}^{1/2}}{n} \quad (3.6)$$

where,  $q_{ch}$  is the rate of flow in the channel ( $m^3/s$ ),

$A_{ch}$  is the cross-sectional area of flow in the channel ( $m^2$ ),

$R_{ch}$  is the hydraulic radius for a given depth of flow (m),

$slp_{ch}$  is the slope along the channel length (m/m),

$n$  is Manning's "n" coefficient for the channel, and

$V_{ch}$  is the flow velocity (m/s).

SWAT calculates the peak runoff rate using the peak channel velocity ( $V_{pk}$ ), and the peak flow rate ( $q_{pk}$ ). These two important factors of the sediment transport are given by the following equations:

Peak channel flow velocity,  $V_{pk}$

$$V_{pk} = q_{pk} / A_{ch} \quad (3.7)$$

Peak flow rate,  $q_{ch, pk}$

$$q_{ch, pk} = CIA / 3.6 \quad (3.8)$$

Where, C is the runoff coefficient,

I is the rainfall intensity (mm/hr),

A is the subbasin area (km<sup>2</sup>) and 3.6 is a unit conversion factor.

Peak flow velocity ( $q_{pk}$ ) is affected by the uncertainty in channel dimensions (slope, length, width and depth) estimated from the 30m DEM. Peak flow can be calibrated using an adjustment factor for peak flow, PRF, using

$$q_{pk} = PRF \cdot q_{ch} \quad (3.9)$$

PRF = is the peak rate adjustment factor.

Once these two factors are known, the maximum amount of sediment that can be transported from a reach segment is calculated using:

$$Sed_{mx} = SPCON * V_{pk}^{spexp} \quad (3.10)$$

Where:- SPCON, is a coefficient for the max amount of sediment that can be re-entrained, as defined by the user,

- SPEXP is used to calculate sediment re-entrained during channel sediment routing

### **Sediment Deposition**

Sediment deposition occurs when the initial concentration of sediment in the reach ( $Sed_i$ ) is more than the maximum amount of sediment transported to the reach ( $Sed_{mx}$ ).

Under this circumstance, the net amount of sediment deposited is calculated by:

$$Sed_{dep} = (sed_i - sed_{mx}) * V_{ch} \quad (3.11)$$

Where  $V_{ch}$  is the volume of water in the reach segment

### **Sediment re-entrained**

If  $Sed_i < Sed_{mx}$  degradation is the dominant process in the reach segment, and the net amount of sediment re-entrained is calculated as:

$$\text{Sed}_{\text{re}} = (\text{sed}_{\text{mx}} - \text{sed}_{\text{i}}) * V_{\text{ch}} * K_{\text{ch}} * C_{\text{ch}} \quad (3.12)$$

Where  $K_{\text{ch}}$  is the channel erodibility factor (cm/hr/Pa), and  $C_{\text{ch}}$  is the channel cover factor.

Once the amount of deposition and degradation has been calculated, the final amount of sediment in the reach is determined by:

$$\text{Sed}_{\text{susp}} = \text{sed}_{\text{i}} - \text{sed}_{\text{dep}} + \text{sed}_{\text{deg}} \quad (3.13)$$

## **3.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS**

### **3.2.1. Description of the Study Area**

The texture of LRW soils for the most part is clay and silt that have slow settling characteristics and are often carried long distances causing turbidity problems. Payne (1994), estimated that TSS in the Minnesota river basin is 86% silt and clay. Similarly, MPCA has reported that the Minnesota River carries more suspended sediment than most of the State's rivers (Senjem, 1997).

There are four principal sources of sediment from the LRW, namely soil erosion in upland areas, head-cut and knick point migration of ravines, stream bank erosion and river bluff slumping. The streams of the LRW flow through glacial till or lacustrine plains, cutting deep down into the soils and working upstream into the agricultural lands. This has resulted in head cut and nick point migration that initiates the development of ravines and slumping of river bluffs. Sekely et al. (2002) in their study of slumping streams in Blue Earth River, adjacent to LRW, reported average annual bluff erosion rates of 2,154 t /ha, contributing up to 44% of the TSS load. This suggests that bluffs are an important source of sediment in the LRW.

The LRW is impaired for turbidity in several river reaches in the watershed. Unless some mitigation measures are taken, excessive sediment flux from the LRW can destroy aquatic habitats and biotic communities, increase the cost of water treatment, and reduce the aesthetic qualities of not only the LRW, but also all receiving water bodies downstream, including Lake Pepin.

### **3.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis**

The LRW SWAT model setup procedures and objective functions used to evaluate model performance were described in Chapter 2 of this study. Detailed descriptions of sources for primary input data required to build the model, (weather, topography, soils, land use, stream network etc) were also described. SWAT sediment modeling has additional requirements including information about tillage management practices and measured Total Suspended Solid (TSS) levels . These data were obtained from MDA field surveys and USGS monitoring stations in the watershed (Table 2-4).

### **3.2.3. Sensitivity Analysis, Calibration and Validation**

The transport and deposition of sediment along a stream reach is known to be impacted by the amount and velocity of the stream flow. Thus, accurate prediction of discharge (Chapter 2 of this study) is very important for accurate simulation of sediment loads. Migliaccio and Chaubey (2008) studied the Illinois River watershed in Northwest Arkansas and found that a small uncertainty in flow predictions may lead to high uncertainty in predicted sediment values. Sensitivity analysis, calibration and validation work for sediment was started after calibration and validation of the SWAT model for discharge.

There are several parameters that can affect SWAT sediment predictions. Some of these parameters are known to affect the flow component, too. Sediment predictions are more sensitive to some parameters than others and it might be feasible to exclude the insensitive ones. Parameters that are known to strongly affect sediment include PRF, SPCON, SPEXP, CH\_N, CH\_K2, CH\_Cov, USLE-C and USLE-P (Bingner et al., 1997; Jha et al., 2004; Kirsch et al., 2004; Migliaccio and Chaubey, 2008; Muleta and Nicklow, 2005; Santhi et al., 2001; White and Chaubey, 2005)(Table 3-1).

A sensitivity analysis of the LRW sediment parameters was made using Latin Hypercube One factor At a Time (LH-OAT) routine which is built into the SWAT model. It combines LH sampling and OAT design for simulation. This method is based

on Monte Carlo simulations. The procedure starts by generating random values of the parameters and subdividing the distribution of each parameter into n ranges of 1/n equal probability of occurrence, each range being sampled only once. Then, the model is run n times, with random combinations of the parameters. The change in model output for each model run, made after changing a single input parameter, is evaluated and the result is explicitly attributed to the changes made in the selected parameter.

The sensitivity analysis of LRW sediment used 10 intervals. OAT parameter changes of 0.05 were made for a random seed number of 2001. The parameter bounds and the variation method (imet) used are shown in Tables 3-2 & 3-3 below:

Table 3-2: Imet used for sensitivity analysis

imet	Description
1	Replacement of initial parameter by value
2	Adding value to initial parameter
3	Multiplying initial parameter by value (in percentage)

Table 3-3: Sediment calibration parameters used by SWAT modelers

Parameter	Description	Min	Max	Source
SPCON	A linear parameter used in channel sediment routing	0.0001	0.01	1,2,4
SPEXP	An exponent parameter used in channel sediment routing	1	1.5	1,2,4
PRF	Adjustment factor for sediment routing in the main channel	0.001	2	2,4
CH_N	Manning's n value	0.01	0.15	2,4
CH_K2	Channel erodibility factor	-0.05	0.06	3,4
CH_Cov	Channel cover factor	-0.001	1	3,4
USLE-C				3
USLE-P				3,4

- 1.(Santhi et al., 2001)
2. (White and Chaubey, 2005)
3. (Kirsch et al., 2002)
4. (*Muleta and Nicklow, 2005*)

Table 3-4: Sediment parameter bounds for calibration

	PARAMETER	LOWER BOUND	UPPER BOUND	imet
1	Ch_Cov	0	1	1
2	Ch_Erod	0	1	1
1	Ch_K2	0	150	1
4	Ch_N	0	1	1
5	Cn2	-25	25	3
6	Epc0	0	1	1
7	Esco	0	1	1
8	Sol_Awc	-25	25	3
9	Sol_K	-25	25	3
10	Sol_Z	-25	25	3
11	Spcon	0.0001	0.01	1
12	Spexp	1	2	1
11	Surlag	0	10	1
14	Timp	0	1	1
15	Usle_C	-25	25	3
16	Usle_P	0	1	1

The most sensitive sediment related parameters PRF, SPCON, SPEXP, CH\_N, and CH\_K2 cannot be directly estimated from topographic or soil characteristics. The values for these parameters are rarely available to fully support the SWAT sediment modeling. They are typically identified using sensitivity analysis, and their values were determined based on similar research conducted in the nearby area or through calibration procedures.

The Beauford sub-watershed was selected as a representative watershed expected to have relatively homogeneous parameter values for sediment input factors. Calibration of the sensitive sediment variables in the Beauford sub-watershed allows extrapolation of sediment input parameters to all other sub-watersheds in the LRW.

Sediment calibration was made manually using the year 2000 as a calibration year. Calibration started using SWAT model default values and then adjusting sensitive parameters based on available data and knowledge about the LRW. Calibration was

made by changing one variable at a time and then comparing the fitness of simulated monthly sediment outputs against measured loads based on the NSE efficiency index.

The calibrated model was validated for sediment on a monthly basis for the years 2001-2006 in the Beauford sub-watershed and for the years 1999-2006 for the entire LRW. SWAT model sediment validation provides a measure of model accuracy in years different from the calibration year and at locations different than the watershed where the model was calibrated.

### **3.2.4. Representation of Erosion and Sediment Control BMPs**

Once the spatial location of sources of sediment in the LRW are known, best management practices (BMPs) that can minimize erosion and sediment transport are selected and evaluated. Since the focus of this study is sediment from upland regions of the LRW, application of the BMPs will also focus on those areas.

#### **Tillage BMPs**

The level of residue cover on the soil surface is affected by the type of tillage operation and implements used. Reduced tillage leaves residue on the surface, thereby reducing sediment losses. The LRW is characterized by a cropping rotation of corn and soybeans. Reduced tillage of corn residue helps reduce sediment losses in the soybean crop year. Two basic tillage BMPs, conservation tillage and no till, were evaluated.

#### **Conservation tillage**

Conservation tillage is a tillage system in which over 30 percent of the soil surface is covered with crop residue after planting. Three different scenarios of conservation tillage were tested on the corn residue from the year before soybeans were planted in the LRW:

- On all fields going from corn to soybean
- Corn going into soybeans on land steeper than 2% slope.
- On half of fields planted to corn

### **No-till**

No-till is a tillage system that leaves the soil undisturbed from harvesting to planting. Planting and fertilization are done with row cleaners and slits in the soil for placing seed and nutrients. Weeds are controlled with herbicides, except when doing emergency weed control.

### **Filter Strips (VFS)**

Vegetative filter strips (VFS) also called 'buffer strips' are land areas of either planted or indigenous vegetation that are established between a potential pollutant-source area and a surface-water body that receives runoff. VFS can protect water-quality by reducing the amount of sediment in runoff at the edge of the field, and before the runoff enters the surface-water body. The provision of soil cover by the VFS gives localized erosion protection. The effects of VFS in trapping sediment can be enhanced if applied in conjunction with other land management practices, such as contour plowing, conservation tillage, crop rotations and strip cropping.

Often constructed along stream, lake, pond or sinkhole boundaries, filter strips installed on cropland not only help remove pollutants from runoff, but also serve as habitat for wildlife, and provide an area for field turn rows and haymaking. In some instances, a filter strip could be used as pasture in a controlled-grazing, livestock management system, if livestock are kept fenced out of the stream or lake. Additionally, filter strips may provide increased safety by moving machinery operations away from steep stream and ditch banks.

VFS are one of the most effective methods to trap sediment effectively. Establishing VFS at the edge of agricultural fields or adjacent to streams or drainage ditches has been shown to be effective in removing sediment loss from upland runoff.

The SWAT model algorithm for VFS sediment trapping efficiency is given by:

$$trap_{eff} = 0.367(width_{filtstrip})^{0.2967} \quad (3.14)$$

where  $\text{trap}_{\text{eff}}$  is the fraction of the constituent loading trapped by the filter strip, and  $\text{width}_{\text{filtstrip}}$  is the width of the filter strip (m).

This equation has some limitations. Even though there are many factors affecting sediment trapping efficiency, such as runoff volume, soil properties, and vegetative properties, the SWAT model algorithm to simulate VFS effects on sediment reduction is set only as a function of width. Despite this limitation, two different alternative scenarios of VFS were tested in the LRW.

- on all corn-soy land steeper than 2% slope
- on all corn-soy CCAs.

### **Cover Crops**

Erosive rain storms can induce substantial soil loss following soybeans, because of the low residue production and rapid decomposition. The erosion rate following soybeans has been reported to be up to seven fold greater than following corn (Laflen and Colvin, 1981). Cover crops may be effective at controlling erosion from harvested soybean fields. The SWAT model was used to evaluate the impacts on sediment loss of planting rye immediately after soybean harvest in early October. Cover crops were harvested the 3rd week of April.

### 3.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

#### 3.3.1. Sediment Input Parameters

The LRW SWAT model requires numerous input parameters. Most of the input parameters were generated using ARCGIS during model development, and several others were developed for the purpose of LRW hydrology modeling. Inputs that are specific to sediment were developed during management input data organization and during parameter optimization through sensitivity analysis and calibration procedures described in sections 3.3.2 and 3.3.3.

Tillage operations have a major impact on sediment loss. Tillage management operations for baseline conditions are shown in Table 3-5.

Table 3-5: Management operations associated with sediment

Year	Crop type	Management operation	Date
Year 1	Corn	- Secondary tillage Cultivation (Field Cultivator)	28-Apr
		- Planting corn	1-May
		- Harvest/kill	20-Oct
		- Primary Tillage (Chisel Plow)	25-Oct
Year 2	Soybean	- Secondary tillage Cultivation (Field Cultivator)	12-May
		- Planting soybean	15-May
		- Harvest/kill	7-Oct
		- Primary Tillage (Chisel Plow)	12-Oct

#### 3.3.2. Sensitivity analysis

As shown in Figure 3-1, the most sensitive parameters for sediment load predictions during calibration and parameterization are peak rate adjustment factor for sediment routing in the main channel (PRF), linear parameter for calculating the maximum amount of sediment that can be re-entrained during channel sediment routing (SPCON), exponent parameter for calculating sediment re-entrained in channel sediment routing

(SPEXP), USLE cover factor (USLE-C), Manning’s “n” value for the tributary channels (CH\_N), effective hydraulic conductivity of main channel (CH\_K2), soil available water capacity (AWC) and soil evaporation compensation factor (ESCO). Calibration of other sensitive parameters that affect SWAT hydrologic processes such as SURLAG, ESCO and AWC are described in Chapter 2. Most of the parameters important for simulation of sediment losses control upland sediment transport and deposition processes. Since channel degradation was not simulated, the two parameters, CH\_N and CH\_K2, that affect channel sediment processes were not calibrated.

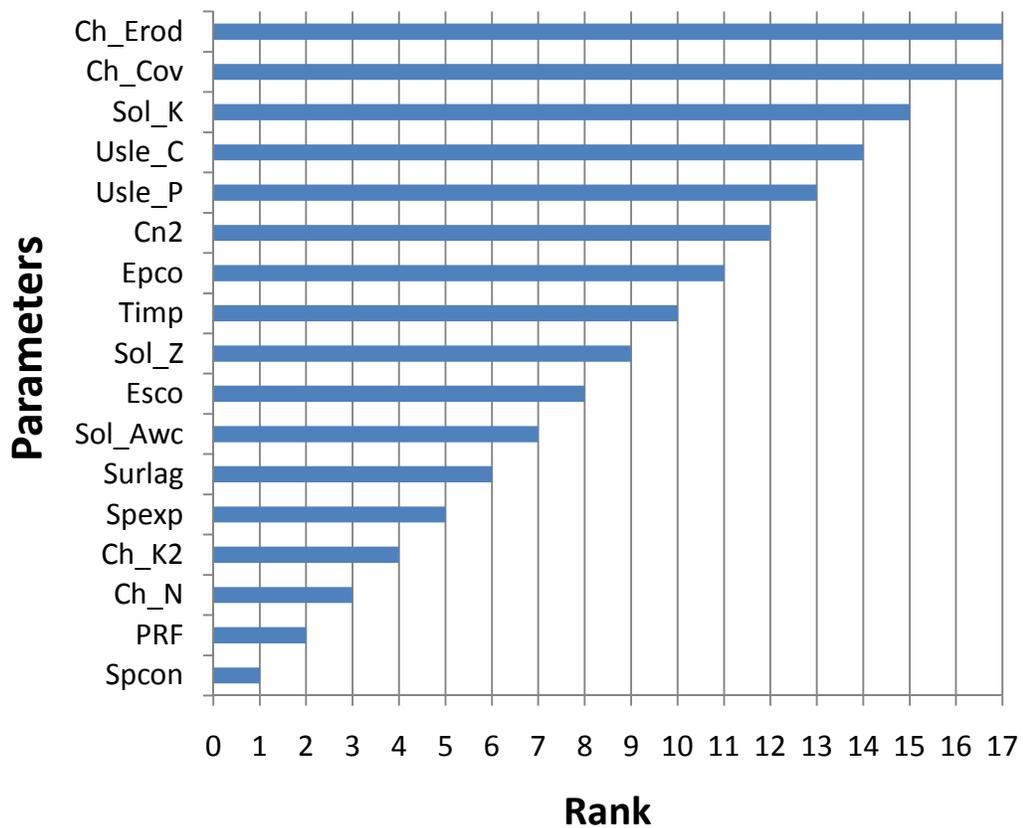
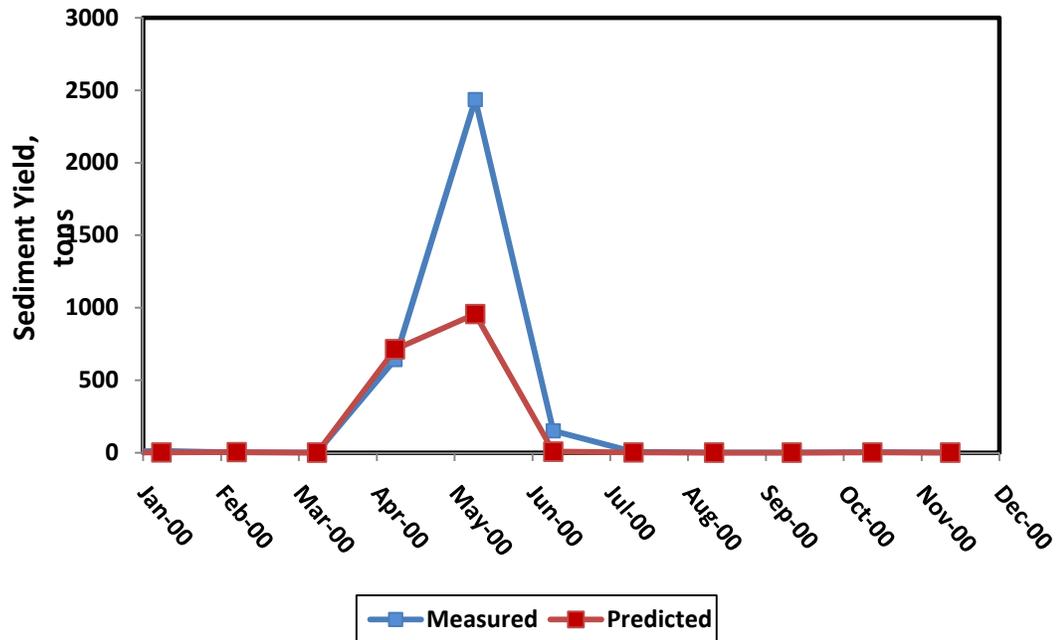


Figure 3-1: Sensitivity of Sediment Related Parameters

### 3.3.3. Calibration and Validation of Sediment

The calibration results showed good agreement between measured and predicted sediment load at the mouth of the Beauford sub-watershed with an NSE of 0.71 (Figure 3-2). The predicted sediment load was less than the measured by about 12%, which

could be the contribution from ditch bank slumping or near ditch sources of concentrated flow.



**Figure 3-2:** Calibration of Sediment Load in Beauford Sub-watershed (Year 2000)

The predicted sediment load in the Beauford sub-watershed for the validation years of 2001-2006 was satisfactory, with NSE values of 0.61 and 0.75 for monthly and annual loads, respectively (Figure 3-3 & Figure 3-4 ). Overall, the time to peaks of the simulated sediment yield consistently matched the time to measured peaks of sediment yield in different seasons. Since the model only predicts upland sediment sources, the predicted sediment load was consistently under predicted at the mouth of the LRW. Validation of sediment load in the Beauford sub-watershed from 2001-2005 was satisfactory, with an NSE value of 0.81 (Figure 3-3). Measured (961 t/yr) and predicted (994 t/yr) sediment loads were very close. Sediment losses during these years average 0.47 t/ha.

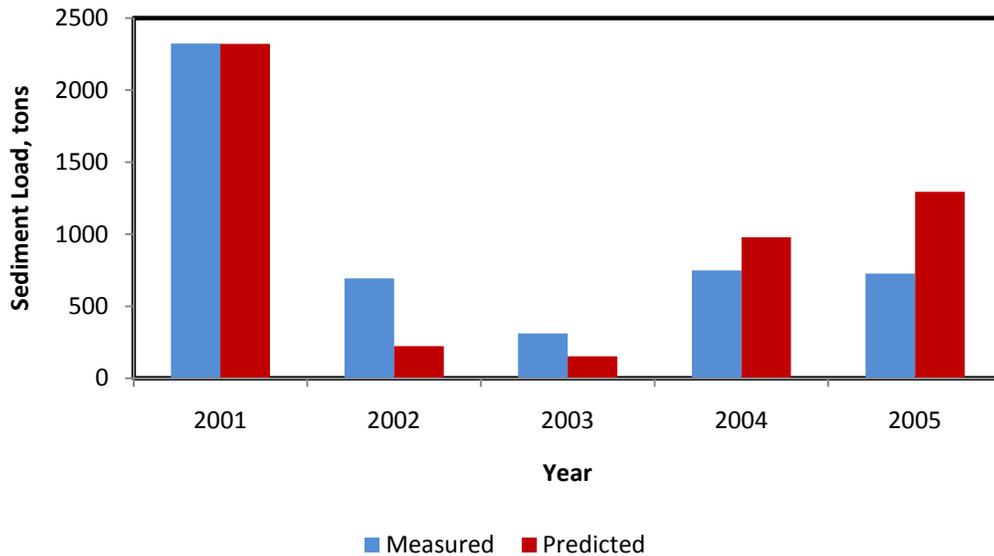


Figure 3-3: Validation of Annual Sediment Yield in the Beauford Watershed

Not all calibrated sediment parameters for the SWAT model in the Beauford sub-watershed were directly transferrable to the entire LRW. Calibration at the HRU level in the Beauford watershed involves channel length and time of concentration parameters which fail to represent hydrologic processes occurring at the scale of the LRW. This results in over prediction of peak runoff rate. As scale increases, there is an increasing uncertainty for SWAT estimated channel dimensions (width, depth and channel slope). In Iowa, Jha et al. (2004) found that increasing the number of HRUs causes sediment yield to be over predicted. To overcome these nuances of the SWAT model, it was decided to estimate the sediment yield for any given year using a range of PRF values (peak runoff rate) taken over equal intervals from 0.35 to 1, in order to capture the uncertainties in channel dimensions. The maximum value 1 was obtained from calibration in the Beauford sub-watershed, and a PRF value of 0.35 was assumed to be the minimum value under extreme weather conditions.

The predicted annual sediment yield of the LRW for PRF values ranging from 0.35 to 1 varied from 13% to 30% of the total measured sediment load at the mouth of the LRW (306,318 t/yr). This indicates that 70% to 87% of the sediment loss from the LRW was

contributed by channel sources, which could include slumping stream bluffs and ravines. The average upland sediment losses occurring at a PRF value of 0.65 was 21% of the total sediment yield. Therefore, the long term annual average sediment yield from channel sources of the LRW is about 79%.

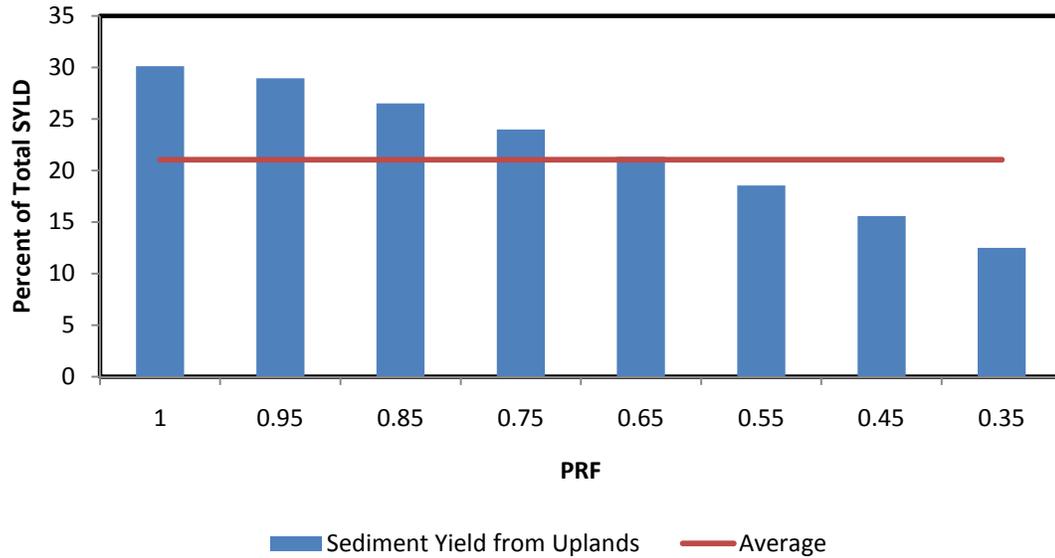


Figure 3-4: Average annual sediment yield from LRW uplands

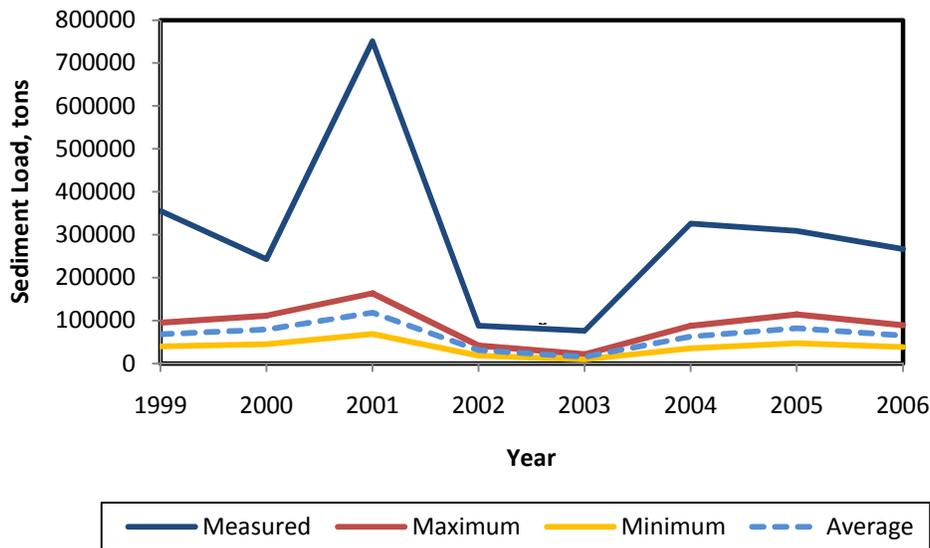


Figure 3-5: Validation of Annual Sediment Yield in the LRW

### 3.3.4. Temporal and Spatial Distribution of LRW Sediment Yields

The annual sediment yield in major tributaries of the LRW (Big Cobb, Maple and Upper Le Sueur) exhibited remarkable spatial and temporal differences. The variability is attributed to differences in contributing area, hydrology, soils, topography and climate, mainly rainfall intensity and timing. Analysis of the monthly distribution of sediment yield shown in Figure 3-6, indicates that 67% of the sediment yield occurs in the three months from April to June. There is no substantial sediment yield in the four months from November to February. The average annual sediment yield in the LRW was 1.6 t/ha (Table 3-6).

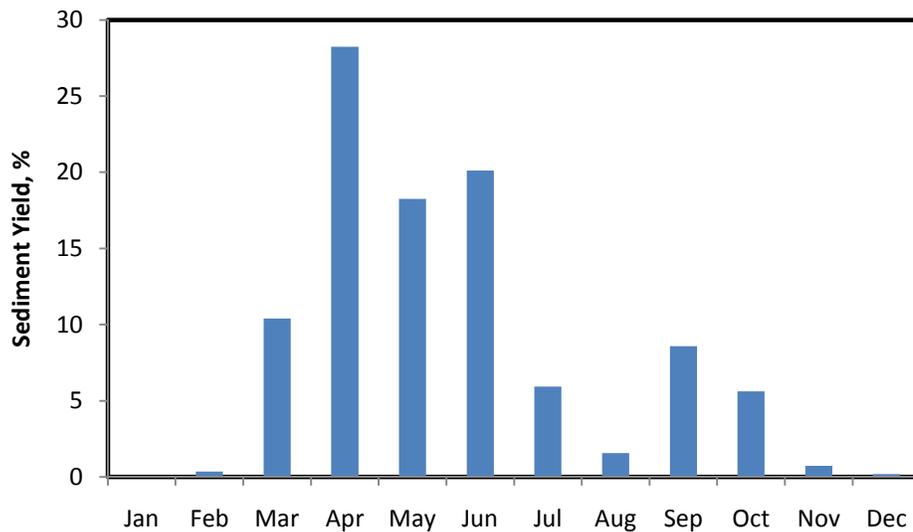


Figure 3-6: Average monthly sediment yield of LRW (1994-2006), ton/ha

Annual sediment yield in the LRW was below average in 8 of the 13 years of simulation. Annual sediment yield was 38% less than the average for the years 1994-1998. Sediment yield doubled during the years from 1998 to 2006 considering the year 1998 as a base year. Correlation coefficients of the linear regression of average sediment yield to surface runoff over the years 1994 to 2006 (Figure 3-7) suggest that the increase in sediment yield was primarily due to increases in surface runoff.

Increased surface runoff is related to increased total amounts of precipitation received in those years. The minimum surface runoff (22.8 mm) occurred in the dry year of 2003,

when the precipitation was 590 mm, leading to a sediment yield of only 0.4 t/ha. In contrast, 923 mm of rainfall in the wet year of 2000 caused 145 mm of surface runoff flow that generated sediment yield of 3.9 t/ha. The sediment yield response to amount of annual precipitation was not as strong as the response to the surface runoff. Changes in precipitation only explained 62% of the variation in sediment yield, while surface runoff explained 86% of the variation (Figure 3-7 and Figure 3-8).

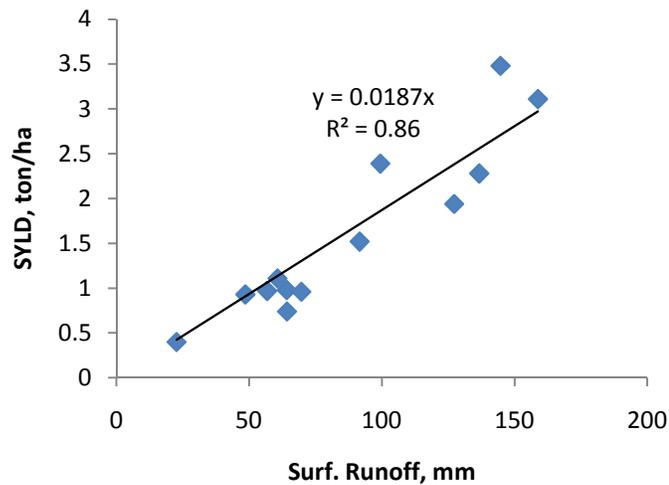


Figure 3-7: Sediment yield runoff relationship

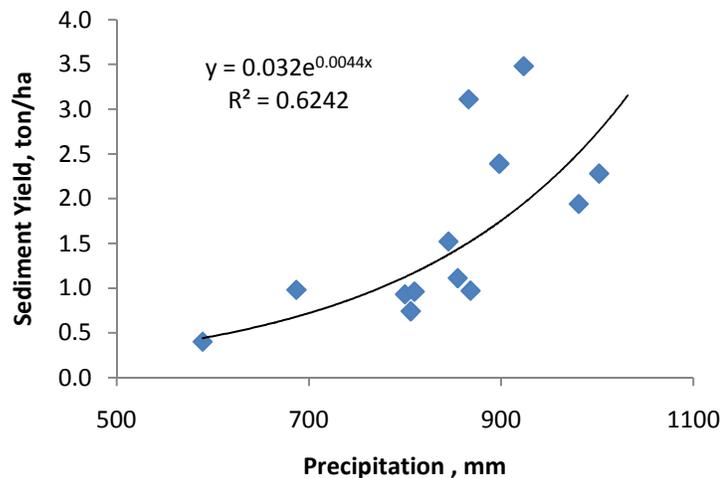


Figure 3-8: Sediment yield versus precipitation

Table 3-6: Average annual hydrology and sediment yield of LRW

<b>Year</b>	<b>Precipitation, mm</b>	<b>WYLD, mm</b>	<b>Surf. Runoff, mm</b>	<b>SYLD, ton/ha</b>
1994	854.70	207.32	60.79	1.25
1995	868.08	256.92	56.91	1.08
1996	799.87	144.55	48.77	1.08
1997	686.95	194.95	64.25	1.15
1998	809.81	178.84	69.81	1.13
1999	897.94	296.24	99.63	2.66
2000	923.42	267.06	144.80	3.90
2001	866.11	337.12	158.99	3.58
2002	805.92	173.55	64.36	0.87
2003	589.52	110.65	22.77	0.44
2004	980.67	241.34	127.38	2.29
2005	1001.75	307.53	136.92	2.52
2006	845.13	276.53	91.75	1.78
Average	840.76	230.20	88.24	1.83

### **Sediment Source Areas**

Identifying sediment source areas is crucial to design proper abatement strategies and develop TMDL initiatives. In the case of the LRW, the CCAs contributed disproportionately high water yield, but CCAs did not have large differences in sediment yield from the rest of the watershed area. Considering the flatness of the LRW landscape and the variability in channel dimensions (channel width, depth, slope and slope length), application of a single PRF (the peak rate adjustment factor) value for the whole watershed was not a valid option. Therefore, the sediment yield was calculated for a range of PRF values from 0.35 to 1. The maximum value was obtained from the calibration in the Beauford sub-watershed, and the minimum PRF of 0.35 was assumed for a very dry year. The results of this setup have shown the uplands can contribute 13%-30% of the annual LRW sediment yield. The average sediment yield over several years was 21% at a PRF value of 0.65.

SWAT estimated higher sediment loss rates at the HRU scale than at the sub-watershed level. Thus, scale of analysis had an important impact on sediment losses. At the HRU scale analysis, 91% of the upland areas of the LRW delivered less than 5 t/ha and 9% delivered over 5 t/ha on average (Figure 3-9 & 3 -10). Roughly 25% of the LRW generated half of the upland sediment losses (Figure 3-10). In contrast, at the sub-watershed scale, there was no area in the LRW that yielded over 5 t/ha and 94% of the watershed had less than 3 t/ha sediment yield.

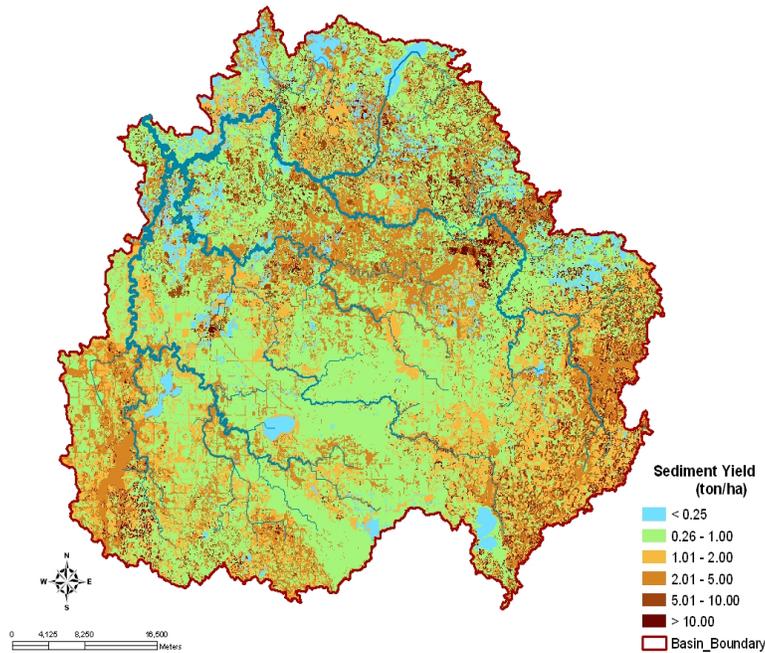


Figure 3-9: HRU Based Spatial Distribution of Sediment yield in the LRW

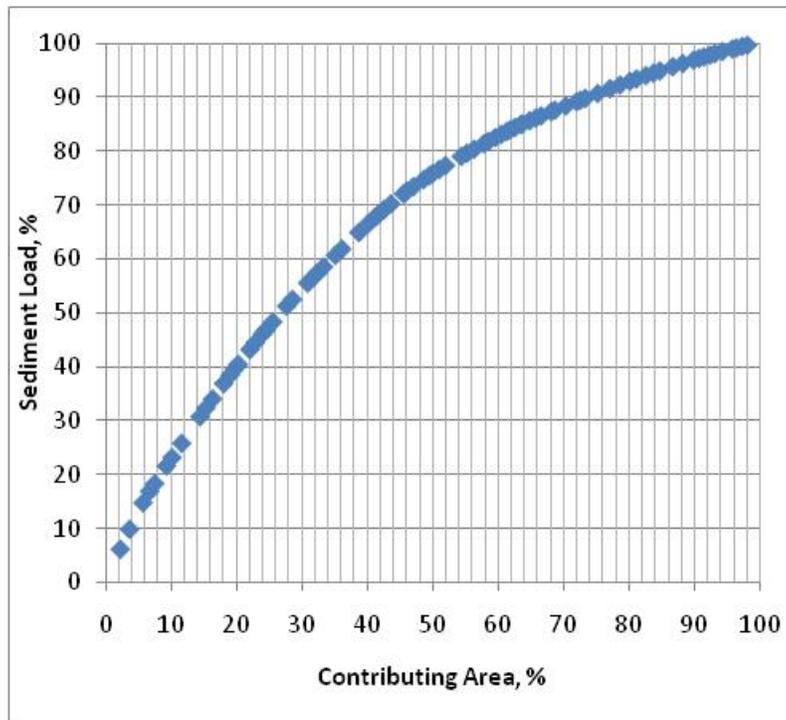


Figure 3-10: Cumulative Sediment Yield vs Contributing Watershed Area of LRW

Table 3-7: Summary of Sediment Yield Vs Contributing Areas of LRW

SYLD, ton/ha	HRU Based Analysis		Sub-watershed Based Analysis	
	Area, ha	Area, %	Area, ha	Area, %
< 1	152945	54	145276	46
1 - 2	46324	16	81799	26
2 - 3	32651	11	71577	22
3 - 4	16550	6	8782	3
4 - 5	10223	4	10698	3
5 to 10	19000.6	7	0	0
10 to 20	7512.59	3	0	0
> 20	470.72	0	0	0
Total	285676	100	318132	100

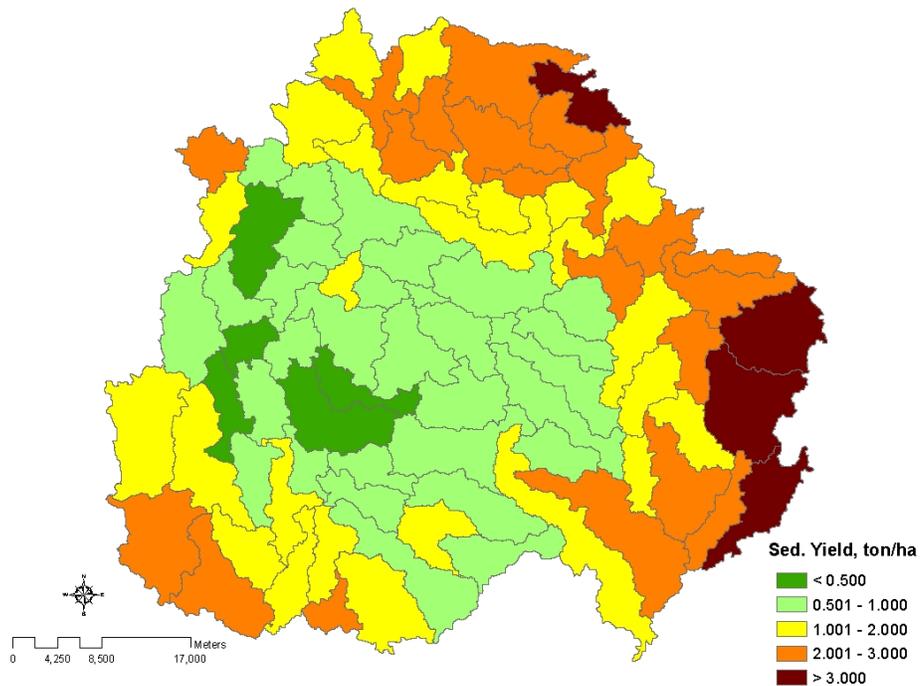


Figure 3-11: Sub-watershed Based Spatial Distribution of Sediment yield

Evaluation of the spatial distribution of the average upland sediment yield from the three major sub-watersheds, the Upper Le Sueur, the Big-Cobb and Maple major-sub-watersheds over the years from 1994-2006 showed 58%, 18% and 24%, respectively, of the upland sediment load from each watershed (Figure 3-12).

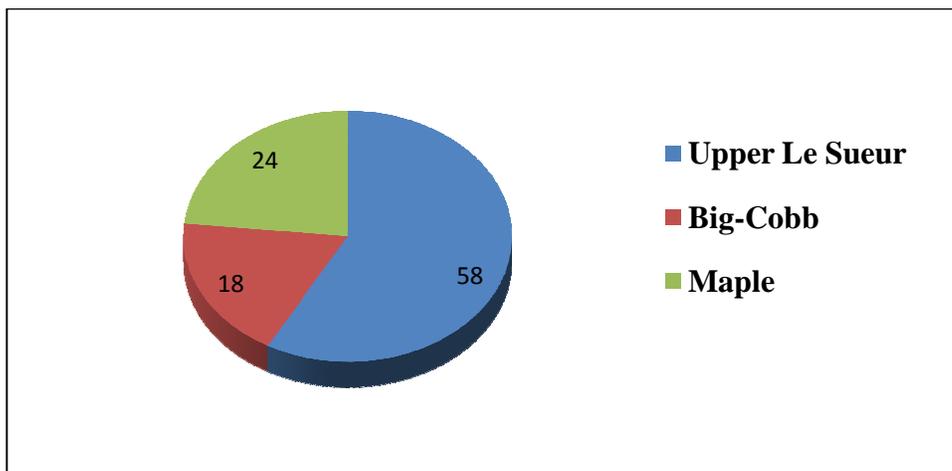


Figure 3-12: Average annual upland sediment yield of LRW major sub-watersheds

The relative contributions of predicted upland and inferred channel sediment sources during the 2006 growing season are shown in Table 3-8 for each of the three major sub-watershed outlets and the LRW outlet. The measured sediment yield of the LRW in 2006 was about 230,502 tons. The SWAT model predicted 32,893 tons at the LRW outlet, which means that the upland contribution to total sediment load was 14%. By inference, most of the sediment (86%) was generated from channel sources, including river bluffs, stream banks and ravines. Based on HRU level sediment loss estimates for the entire LRW, only about 9% of the sediment loss at the HRU scale reaches the outlet of the LRW. About 93% of the sediment losses in the LRW occur during the growing season/months of April to September. At scales finer than the entire LRW, the SWAT model predicted that agricultural uplands in the Big Cobb, Maple and Upper Le Sueur sub-watersheds contributed 38%, 22% and 12% of the sediment loads measured during 2006, respectively, at their outlets. By inference, the Big Cobb, Maple and Upper Le Sueur sub-watersheds generate 62, 78 and 88% of their sediment from channel sources, respectively. These differences in sediment sources can be explained in terms of differences in upland slope steepness class distributions and differences in the frequency of river bluffs and ravines.

Table 3-8: Predicted and measured sediment loads from the LRW and its major tributaries in the 2006 growing season.

Sub-watershed	Predicted Upland Sed. Load		Channel Erosion (estimated by difference)		Measured Total Sediment Load	Average Sed. Yield
	tons	%	tons	%	tons	tons/ha
Beauford	178	83	36	27	214	0.10
Big Cobb	8998	38	14785	62	23783	0.30
Maple	11047	22	39290	78	50337	0.57
Upper Le Sueur	20019	12	146462	88	166481	1.44
LRW	32893	14	197609	86	230502	0.81

### **3.3.5. Sediment BMPs**

Over 70% of the sediment load of the LRW originates from channel sources, and upland agricultural areas contribute a maximum of 30%. Reduction of sediment yield requires application of BMPs on both agricultural and in channel areas. Evaluating BMPs to reduce channel sources of sediment is beyond the scope of this modeling effort. Thus, we have focused on alternative BMPs to reduce the upland sediment loads only.

Upland sediment erosion, transport and deposition in the LRW can be reduced through a variety of measures, including reduced tillage, crop rotation, waterways and terraces, grassed buffers at the field edge, and catch basins. The impact of selected BMPs to reduce the upland sediment loadings of the LRW and its tributaries were evaluated using the SWAT model. The BMPs were tested for specific land use and potential sediment source areas.

#### **Tillage BMPs**

Management of the surface residue cover through applying reduced tillage is considered the primary means of sediment reduction for the Minnesota River Basin (Senjem et al., 1996). Maintaining over 30% residue cover can significantly reduce upland sediment losses. Even under conditions where secondary BMPs are required, residue management makes them less costly, more effective, and longer lasting (Senjem et al., 1996).

Three different scenarios of conservation tillage were tested in the corn residue from the year before soybeans were planted:

- On all fields under corn residue going from corn to soybean
- Corn going into soybeans on land over 2% slope.
- On 50% of corn fields

Each scenario resulted in sediment load reductions of 13% in the LRW compared to the baseline scenario of conventional tillage. Application of conservation tillage on 50% of randomly selected fields (73,852 ha) decreased the sediment yield by 9%. Application

of no-till on the same randomly selected 50% fields decreased the sediment yield by 31% (Table 3-9).

Table 3-9: Sediment Loss Under Different Tillage BMP Scenarios

Year	Baseline Scenario	Conservation tillage			No till
		All Corn land	Land > 2% slope	50% Corn land	50% Corn land
		Sed. load, tons (% of baseline)			
1994	351623	309445(85.6)	309846(85.7)	323940(89.8)	228480(65.5)
1995	289349	253626(83.6)	255653(84.2)	270498(89.8)	204231(60.2)
1996	329939	284724(90.2)	285448(90.4)	304293(93.3)	220709(72)
1997	330432	282700(88.6)	283078(89)	296739(97.1)	216413(69.6)
1998	318872	266662(86.4)	268522(86.5)	286298(91.1)	191940(66.7)
1999	680854	614465(84.2)	615686(84.4)	635388(89.5)	490084(66.7)
2000	992003	878960(92.3)	882518(92.4)	963282(98.5)	690503(79.2)
2001	988949	854127(84.8)	855280(85)	900747(90.6)	659891(67.3)
2002	230289	193831(90.4)	194270(90.5)	206115(93.5)	153680(78.8)
2003	113424	104710(84.3)	104765(84.4)	111703(88.6)	89849(61.9)
2004	621019	526314(87.2)	527603(87.5)	562554(92.4)	417805(68.6)
2005	677579	309445(85.6)	309846(85.7)	323940(89.8)	228480(65.5)
2006	486717	253626(83.6)	255653(84.2)	270498(89.8)	204231(60.2)
Average	493158	284724(90.2)	285448(90.4)	304293(93.3)	220709(72)

### **Filter Strips**

Dillaha et al., (1989) defined vegetative filter strips (VFS) as areas of vegetation designed to remove sediment and other pollutants from surface water runoff by filtration, deposition, infiltration, adsorption, absorption, decomposition, and volatilization. VFS separate a nonpoint pollution source land area from a water body. They are effective at reducing runoff volume and peak velocity primarily because of the filter's hydraulic roughness, and subsequent augmentation of infiltration. Establishing VFS at the edge of agricultural fields or adjacent to streams or drainage ditches has been shown to be effective in removing sediment loss from upland runoff (Dillaha et al., 1989; Munoz-Carpena et al., 1999).

Despite the limitations of the SWAT algorithms discussed in the methodology (section 3.2.3.), two different alternative scenarios of VFS were tested in the LRW (Table 3-10). The simulation results revealed that application of VFS on all fields steeper than 2% slope reduced sediment losses by 56%, while VFS installation on all corn-soy CCAs reduced sediment losses by about 20% as compared to the baseline scenario.

Table 3-10: Sediment Loss Under Different VFS BMP Scenarios

Year	Baseline	On CS land > 2% slope	On all CS CCAs
	Sed. load, tons (% of baseline)		
1994	351623	121382(34.5)	276936(78.8)
1995	289349	106761(36.9)	234533(81.1)
1996	329939	139655(42.3)	261836(79.4)
1997	330432	139791(42.3)	264995(80.2)
1998	318872	137301(43.1)	252456(79.2)
1999	680854	277106(40.7)	550127(80.8)
2000	992003	458741(46.2)	784208(79.1)
2001	988949	450535(45.6)	809755(81.9)
2002	230289	97497(42.3)	164468(71.4)
2003	113424	49782(43.9)	98725(87)
2004	621019	287666(46.3)	488343(78.6)
2005	677579	340709(50.3)	557473(82.3)
2006	486717	208850(42.9)	384537(79)
Average	493158	216598(43.9)	394492(80)

### **Cover Crops**

The vegetative biomass of rye as a cover crop increases the amount of transpiration and decreases the impact of rain drops that can detach soil aggregates. As a result of this, there is an increase in water infiltration and decrease in surface runoff and runoff velocity. Planting rye after the harvest of soybeans in the LRW reduces sediment loss into streams by an average of 32% (Table 3-11).

Table 3-11: Effects of planting rye as a cover crop in reducing sediment loss

Year	Baseline	Rye as cover crop
		Sed. load, tons (% of baseline)
1994	351623	233265(66.34)
1995	289349	197150(68.14)
1996	329939	263284(79.8)
1997	330432	192726(58.33)
1998	318872	196497(61.62)
1999	680854	453698(66.64)
2000	992003	768043(77.42)
2001	988949	609187(61.6)
2002	230289	163233(70.88)
2003	113424	84193(74.23)
2004	621019	459333(73.96)
2005	677579	484285(71.47)
2006	486717	257258(52.86)
Average	493158	335550(67.95)

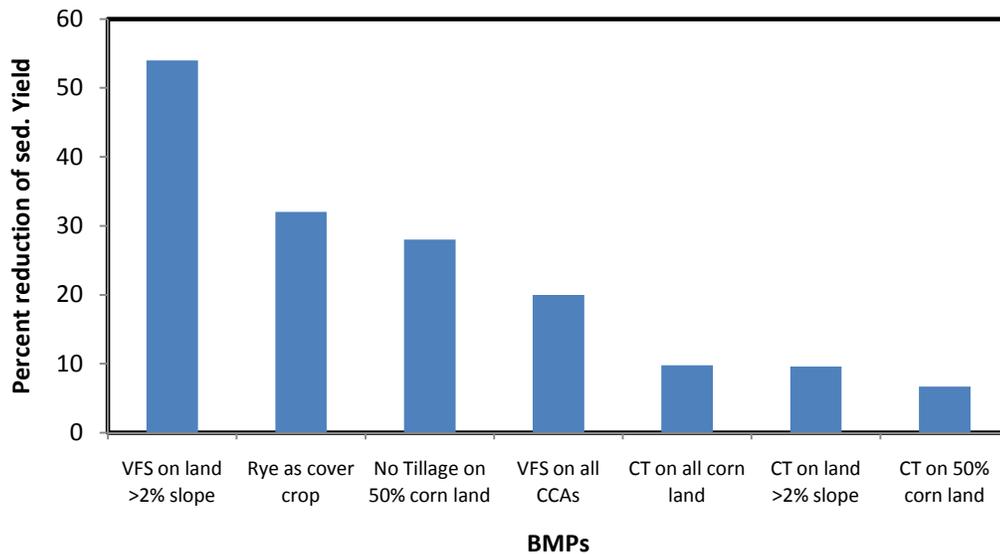


Figure 3-13: Comparison of Different BMP Sediment Loss Reduction Potentials

### **3.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS**

This study has used the strength of the SWAT model; namely its ability to predict sediment losses from upland agricultural regions, to estimate the proportion of total measured sediment loads in the Le Sueur River watershed that arise from upland agricultural regions. The SWAT model was calibrated and validated in a small representative sub-watershed (Beauford) without significant channel sources of sediment, and was found to be very accurate at predicting discharge and sediment loads. At the scale of the LRW, predicted sediment loads were much smaller than measured sediment loads, indicating that upland sediment sources are a small fraction of the total sediment losses at these large scales. Based on the SWAT model simulation results, about 21% of the LRW sediment arises from upland agricultural areas, while 79% arises from river bluffs, ravines and eroding stream channels.

The effectiveness and water quality impacts of best management practices (BMPs), were evaluated for conservation planning and targeting. Conservation tillage, filter strips and rye as a cover crop decreased upland sediment losses from 8% up to 54%. Implementation of sediment BMPs in upland regions of the LRW can only reduce sediment losses by at most a quarter of the total sediment yield. Sediment losses from channels and stream banks, which account for about 79% of the sediment yield, are another important source of turbidity impairment. Measures are needed to reduced sediment losses from these sources. More research is needed to identify and implement interventions that can mitigate sediment losses coming from channel sources.

## **Chapter 4 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED PHOSPHORUS DYNAMICS**

## SYNOPSIS

The Minnesota River is noted for its high P flux to the Mississippi River and Lake Pepin. The LRW is among the top three highest contributors for phosphorus in all the major watersheds of the Minnesota River Basin. The SWAT model was calibrated and validated for hydrology and sediment transport processes and used to simulate the P dynamics of the LRW. The major objectives of the study were to investigate the level of P contamination, P source areas and best management practices that can minimize P losses and improve water quality.

SWAT model calibration for P in the Beauford sub-watershed ( 2000) and validation over the entire LRW (1999-2006) were accurate with NSE values of 0.77 and 0.67, respectively. Total P loss in the LRW was correlated with total sediment yield with an  $R^2$  value of 0.69, and there was also a weak relationship with water discharge. Organic P losses showed a strong linear relationship ( $R^2$  value of 0.79) with sediment flux.

Estimated mean annual total P loss in the LRW from 1994-2006 was 1.02 kg/ha. Steeply sloping lands in the northern and eastern parts of the watershed have the highest annual P yield, exceeding 2 kg/ha/year. Those areas are situated in the Upper Le Sueur major sub-watershed, where 64% of the total LRW P loss arises. Application of vegetative filter strips on targeted areas of the LRW reduced P losses by 64%. P losses in the LRW were reduced by 25-30% relative to baseline conditions by reducing P application rates by 34% or implementing no tillage on 50% of corn fields, or planting rye as a cover crop. P losses were reduced by 15% with conservation tillage on 50% of corn fields.

## 4.1. INTRODUCTION

Phosphorus (P) is an essential element for plant and animal production. Compared to other macronutrients, it is the least mobile element in plant and soils (Khan et al., 2001). P has high affinity to quickly combine with Ca, Fe, and Al ions to form insoluble compounds that precipitate out of solution, causing build-up near the soil surface and ready transport in surface runoff (Broberg and Persson, 1988). Enrichment of fresh water resources with P leads to eutrophication, which involves the increased growth of undesirable organisms such as cyanobacteria (blue-green algae), *Pfiesteria piscicida* and other aquatic weeds. The increase in the density of algae lowers the penetration of sunlight. Consequently, the algae begin to die and decompose thereby consuming dissolved oxygen, which in turn causes the death of aquatic organisms, including fish (Carpenter et al., 1998; Sharpley et al., 2000).

Agricultural nonpoint sources of P are primarily runoff from farm-fields and concentrated animal-feeding sites. These sources have contributed to eutrophication of surface waters, throughout the United States (Lemunyon and Daniel, 1998; Sharpley, 2003; USEPA, 1996a). Although both nitrogen and phosphorus contribute to eutrophication, phosphorus is the most limiting nutrient for the growth of aquatic organisms and thus the primary factor that must be controlled to prevent eutrophication of fresh water bodies (Lemunyon and Daniel, 1998; Lemunyon and Daniel, 1998).

The increase in eutrophication of fresh waters can be controlled through decreasing P inputs to surface waters (Shigaki et al., 2006). Establishment of economically and environmentally sound P management systems requires adoption of local management strategies that consider soil test phosphorus, P application methods, and transport factors such as hydrology and erosion (Mallarino et al., 2002). Since the buildup of P is most prevalent in areas where P from fertilizer and manure is applied in excess of crop needs, the problems of P losses are most severe in areas where soil P levels are highest and where water movement from soil to surface water is greatest (Sharpley et al., 1994). Interest in reducing P loadings to surface waters via implementation of Total Maximum Daily Loads (TMDLs) has increased the urgency for information on the impacts of

agricultural best management practices (BMPs) on P loss. Soil test P data may give information about the spatial distributions of high P source areas, but provide no information about hydrologic or management factors important for P transport to surface waters (Sims et al., 1998). In this regard, the US EPA recommends the application of process based P models that link watershed data, P source areas and land uses so as to evaluate alternative management practices to reduce watershed P loadings and maintain water quality standards ((U.S. USEPA, 2000). EPA has evaluated 65 currently available models for their capabilities and applicability to TMDL development and related watershed management activities. The US EPA designated two of the most widely used water quality models, SWAT and HSPF, for simulation of hydrology and water quality nationwide (Di Luzio et al., 2002; Shoemaker et al., 2005).

#### **4.1.1. Problem Statement**

Phosphorus loadings from the Mississippi River Basin to the hypoxic zone in the northern Gulf of Mexico are about 0.1 million tons/year. Much of this load arises from the headwaters of the Upper and Lower Mississippi (Goolsby et al., 1999). James et al. (1997) reported 45% of the P flux to Lake Pepin is from Minnesota River Basin. Total P flux to Lake Pepin, a natural widening in the Mississippi River south of St. Paul, MN, is a result of increases in applied P fertilizer and hydrologic discharge from the Minnesota, Upper Mississippi and St. Croix River basins (Mulla and Sekely, 2009). Engstrom and Almendinger (2009) showed that the P load in Lake Pepin increased roughly seven fold over the past two centuries. The most drastic increases occurred after 1940 (Engstrom et al., 2009). The concentration of TP in the Minnesota River along the reach from Judson to Fort Snelling averaged 0.34 mg/L over the years from 2000 - 2005 (Water Resources Center, 2007). Birr and Mulla (2001) reported that the total P concentration of stream water quality samples in the Minnesota River Basin routinely exceeded 0.25 mg/L.

The P yield of the LRW is the highest of all the major tributaries of the Minnesota River Basin. Mulla and Mallawatantri (1998) estimated that two thirds of the total Minnesota River P load originated from three of its major watersheds, namely the Lower Minnesota, Blue Earth and Le Sueur River watersheds. Total P concentrations and yield in the Le

Sueur River averaged 0.47 mg/L and 1.15 kg/ha, respectively, over the years from 2000-2005 (Water Resources Center, 2007). Sekely et al. (2002) in their study of the Blue Earth River estimated the total P contribution of stream bank slumping to be 7%-10% . The last 40 mile reach of the Minnesota River had soluble phosphorus concentrations of only 0.0115 mg/L, while the particulate P concentration was 66% of the total P load (James and Larson, 2008). Generally, the mean P concentration of the Minnesota and Le Sueur Rivers was far above the EPA's desired goal of 0.1 mg/L, indicating the need for P load reductions through application of improved management measures.

Randall et al. (1997) showed long term increases in soil test P values in South Central Minnesota due to excess application of P fertilizers and animal manure. Soil test P levels for about 65% of the soil samples in South Central Minnesota were low to medium in 1956. In the early 1990's, 69% of the soil samples from the same area had soil test P values that exceeded 21 ppm . Thus, more application of P in these areas will increase the potential for P losses without providing any agronomic benefits (Randall et al., 1997). Field assessment of soil test P values to understand P transport, loss processes and best management options requires a huge expenditure of financial resources, technical personnel and time (Sharpley et al., 2000). Application of models is a more efficient and feasible means towards the same end. A modeling study that could contribute towards mitigating the high levels of P loss from watersheds in South Central Minnesota, and severe contamination of water resources from Lake Pepin to the Gulf of Mexico is very timely.

#### **4.1.2. Objectives**

The LRW phosphorus modeling study was initiated in response to the phosphorus enrichment and contamination of water resources in the region with the following objectives:

- Evaluate the applicability of the SWAT model to simulate P transport and loss processes under the local climate, topography, and farming systems of South Central Minnesota
- Understand major processes of P transport and loss
- Evaluate spatial and temporal trends of phosphorus loss

- Identify and target parts of the watershed with high P loss
- Develop mitigation strategies for P loss by evaluating the relative importance of different best management practices.

### **4.1.3. Models of Phosphorus Transport and Fate**

Several phosphorus models of different spatial and temporal scales, from risk-based P-index models to complex and dynamic models such as the Soil Water Assessment Tool were developed after 1980 (Radcliffe et al., 2009). The lack of detailed parameterization data on soil physical, chemical, and biological properties as well as crop management and tillage data are common limitations for accurately modeling P (Sharpley et al., 2000). The invention of graphic user interfaces and the use of geographic information system layers and databases for developing input files have contributed to the advancement of model input data management (Radcliffe and Cabrera, 2006).

The most comprehensive process based P models include the Agricultural Nonpoint Pollution Source (AGNPS) (Young et al., 1989), Areal Nonpoint Source Watershed Environment Response Simulation (ANSWERS) (Beasley et al., 1980), Hydrologic Simulation Program - Fortran (HSPF) (Bicknell et al., 1997; Johanson et al., 1984), Agricultural Runoff Model (ARM) (Donigian and Davis, 1978), Erosion Productivity Impact Calculator (EPIC), the lumped parameter model Generalized Watersheds Loading Functions (GWLF) (Haith and Shoemaker, 1987), and the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) (Luzio et al., 2001). These models are capable of simulating the most important processes governing P dynamics, can integrate information over different scales and spatial resolutions, emphasize appropriate best management practices (BMPs), and identify critical source areas where BMPs are most likely to affect watershed scale P losses (Radcliffe and Cabrera, 2006). Modeling approaches used to simulate dissolved and particulate P losses in these models are explained by Sharpley et al., (2002).

Dissolved P in most non-point source models such as AnnAGNPS, EPIC, and SWAT is simulated using an extraction coefficient, available soil P and overland flow volume. The sediment bound particulate P is a product of total soil P, sediment concentration, P enrichment ratio and overland flow volume (Sharpley et al., 2002).

The SWAT model has been applied in several studies of P transport and management studies. Lin et al. (2009) estimated SWAT model P input parameters related to soils and in-stream processes. They calibrated and applied the SWAT model for changes in land use in the Lake Allatoona Watershed of Georgia. Gitau et al. (2004) used SWAT to predict the spatial distribution of P losses and to target critical source areas in the Cannonsville Reservoir watershed. Santhi et al. (2001) validated the SWAT model for the Bosque River watershed. Kirsch et al. (2002) applied the SWAT model to quantify P source areas and effects of applying watershed level BMPs. Despite some limitations of the SWAT model, it has the potential to significantly improve the effectiveness of existing water quality programs through identifying watershed target areas for implementation of conservation measures (White et al., 2009).

The simulation of applied manure for tilled systems where manure is well mixed into soil is adequately simulated in most models. However, surface application of manures or direct transfer of P from broadcast manure to runoff is still not dealt with adequately in most models (Pierson et al., 2001; Sharpley et al., 2002).

Strategies to combat P losses include general measures focusing on reducing the net input of P to agricultural land or targeted measures implemented in areas of the landscape with a high risk of P losses by interrupting the transport pathway and reduce the mobility of P with practices that include reduced tillage, direct injection of manure, of grass filter strips (Withers et al., 2000). Kronvang et al. (2003) described targeted measures to mitigate P losses from agricultural areas to surface waters, as well as the effect, requirements, uncertainties, obstacles, and possible side effects of these measures. The identification of areas that contribute disproportionately high P loads is essential to efficiently manage phosphorus losses at the watershed scale (Gburek et al., 2002). Reducing P inputs to lower soil available P has little or no immediate effect on actual P losses unless excess P buildup is prevented (Sharpley et al., 2000).

#### **4.1.4. Phosphorus Simulation Processes in SWAT Model**

SWAT phosphorus modeling is based on point sources of P, soil applied organic and inorganic P fertilizers, and cycling of P in crop residue and microbial biomass. P cycling accounts for transformations in six soil P pools; three are organic (fresh organic, active and stable organic P) and another three are inorganic pools (labile/solution, active, and stable pools). The major P transformation processes include mineralization of fresh organic P and soil organic matter, and decomposition and immobilization. SWAT requires estimates for the initial mineral P and organic P concentrations in the upper soil layers for phosphorus simulation (Neitsch et al., 2005a).

Phosphorus transport processes simulated in SWAT include surface runoff in solution, losses of P attached to sediment and leaching of soluble P. The amount of soluble P removed in runoff is predicted using solution P concentration in the top 10 mm of soil, the runoff volume and a partitioning factor. Sediment transport of P is simulated with a loading function as described in the SWAT theoretical documentation (Neitsch et al., 2005b). Plant use of phosphorus is estimated using the supply and demand approach. Losses of P in base flow and subsurface losses are considered in calculating total loads. The in-stream P transformation and routing processes of SWAT are taken from QUAL2E – The Enhanced Stream Water Quality Model (Brown and Barnwell, 1987). The various pools of phosphorus its transport and transformation processes modeled by SWAT are shown in Figure (4-1).

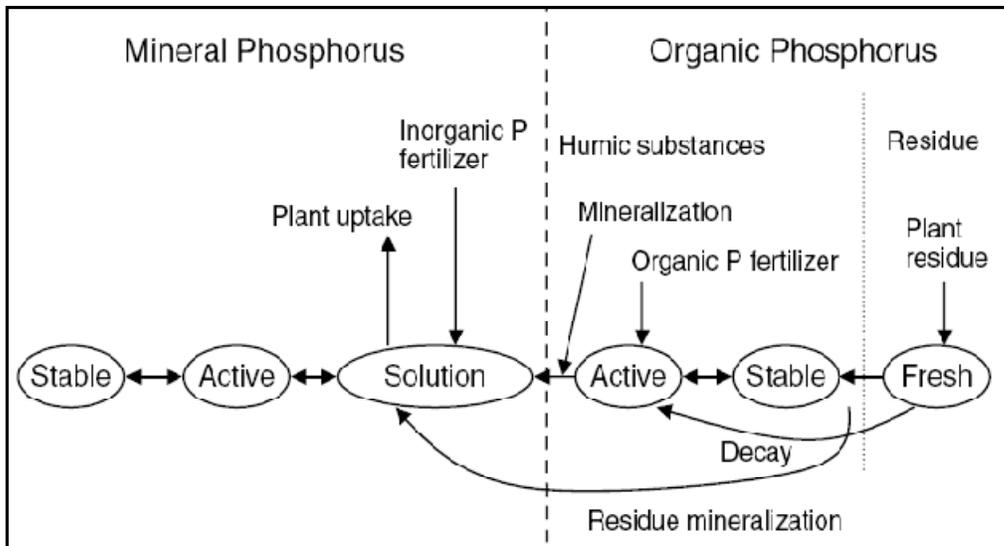


Figure 4-1: SWAT phosphorus pools and phosphorus cycle processes

## 4.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

### 4.2.1. The Study Area

The LRW is one of twelve major watersheds in the Minnesota River Basin. It is part of the Western corn-belt of the USA, where corn-soybean production is the predominant land use. The soils are dominated by fine textured clay and silt mollisols that are formed in very flat lacustrine landscape that is now extensively tile drained. The LRW has been chosen for this study based on P concentrations that routinely exceed the EPA desired goal of 0.1 mg/L. In addition, the watershed has soils with high organic matter content (over 3%) coupled with a long history of excess applications of P from fertilizer and animal manure, making it an area at high risk of P loss.

### 4.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis

Simulation of P losses was made after calibration and validation of SWAT's hydrology and sediment components. Organization of input data specific to P including the management operations file (time, rate and sources of P fertilizer applied, application methods and tillage operations) was made based on data from previous studies and water quality monitoring stations in the area, knowledge about the watershed and a farm survey made by the Minnesota Department of Agriculture. P discharges from 16 point-source

facilities were identified within the 6 counties of the LRW, out of which four within the LRW had monthly discharge monitoring reports used for SWAT modeling.

Monitoring results for P collected by the Met Council and the Minnesota Department of Agriculture for the period from 1994 to 2006 were used to calibrate and validate the model. Monthly calibration was made on the Beauford sub-watershed for the year 2000. Validation of the model occurred over the years 2001-2006 in the Beauford sub-watershed, and from 1994 -2006 in the LRW. Procedures similar to those used in hydrology and sediment predictions were applied for sensitivity analysis, and calibration and validation of P.

The soil test P values to initialize the labile P in the first soil layer were adopted from studies by Schmitt et al. (2001). Initial organic P was calculated from total N using the procedures of Sharpley et al. (1984). Once the initial concentration setup was completed, the model uses different algorithms to calculate the various pools and their interactions in the soil matrix.

SWAT model P mineralization, decomposition, and immobilization processes are represented by procedures developed by Jones et al. (1984). Mineralization of P from crop residue and microbial biomass is regulated by variations in temperature and water availability. Major processes of P dynamics include P uptake by plants, transport in surface runoff and in-stream P cycles (Jones et al., 1984; Neitsch et al., 2005a).

### **Mineral Pools of P**

SWAT initializes the active and stable mineral pools of P based on labile P.

- i. Solution Pool: also known as the labile pool provides P for plant uptake, soluble P in surface runoff, and P leaching. Mineralized organic matter P and inorganic fertilizer P enter this pool. The initial value for this pool is a user defined concentration. The initial Solution pool value, which is an input, sets both the active and stable P pools via fixed ratios.
- ii. Active mineral pool: Interacts slowly with the stable pool and quickly with the solution pool. This pool represents P which is reversibly precipitated or

adsorbed, but is less active than Solution P. It is about 1.5 times larger than the solution pool.

Active mineral pool ( $P_{act.min.pl}$ ) concentrations (mg/kg) are given by:

$$P_{act.min.pl} = P_{sol} * \left[ \frac{1 - PAI}{PAI} \right] \quad (4.1)$$

Where  $P_{sol}$  is the amount of labile P (mg/kg) and PAI is the P availability index.

PAI is estimated using the method outlined by Sharpley et al. (1984).

- iii. Stable mineral pool: is the pool that is not readily available for plant uptake and reaches equilibrium very slowly with the active pool. This is the largest of the mineral P pools, about four times larger than the active pool.

Stable mineral pool ( $P_{st.min.pl}$ ) concentrations (mg/kg) are given by:

$$P_{st.min.pl} = 4 * (P_{act.min.pl}) \quad (4.2)$$

### **Organic Pools of P**

- i. Phosphorus in the fresh organic pool is the sum fresh Organic P from animal manure added to the solution pool and organic P from crop residue set to 0.03% of the initial amount of residue on the soil surface. The SWAT model assumes animal manures are composed of relatively soluble mineral and readily degradable organic forms.
- ii. Organic P concentration ( $P_{hum}$ ) in mg/kg is calculated with the assumption of an 8:1 N to P ratio in humic substances using:

$$\text{Organic } P_{hum} = 0.125 * (N_{hum}) \quad (4.3)$$

Where  $N_{hum}$  is the concentration of humic organic nitrogen in the soil layer (mg /kg).

- iii. Active Organic P (Organic  $P_{act}$ ) is given by:

$$\text{Organic } P_{act} = \text{Organic } P_{hum} * \left[ \frac{\text{Organic } N_{act}}{\text{Organic } N_{act} + \text{Organic } N_{st}} \right] \quad (4.4)$$

- iv. Stable organic P (Organic  $P_{st}$ ) is given by:

$$\text{Organic } P_{st} = \text{Organic } P_{hum} * \left[ \frac{\text{Organic } N_{st}}{\text{Organic } N_{act} + \text{Organic } N_{st}} \right] \quad (4.5)$$

### 4.2.3. Selection of Phosphorus BMPs

Identifying phosphorus best management practices that can maintain a balance between water quality protection and agricultural production of LRW is very important. The following four categories of BMPs have been evaluated to optimize the P fertilizer use efficiency and reduce P losses.

#### A. P application methods:

The P application rate was reduced by 34% from the baseline application rate of 84 kg/ha P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> from both animal manure and applied DAP fertilizer.

#### B. Tillage systems

Cropping systems that maintain at least 30 percent of the soil surface cover with residue after planting can help to reduce soil erosion and the associated P loss. Two alternative tillage BMPs have been tested:

- i. Conservation tillage on 50% of the corn residue in the year before soybean planting.
- ii. Direct seeding of soybean into corn residue without tillage

#### C. Vegetative filter strips (VFS)

Establishment of vegetative grass strips as barrier against surface runoff on corn-soybean fields with slopes steeper than 2% was evaluated for its potential to reduce P losses.

#### D. Cover Crops

Rye was planted on 50% of the crop land after harvesting soybeans as a fall cover crop. The uptake of P by planted rye minimizes availability of P for loss, and maintains the surface cover that minimizes surface runoff losses.

### 4.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

#### 4.3.1. Sensitivity Analysis

There is no single set of P input parameters in the LRW SWAT model which performs well in all circumstances. Different sets of parameters taken together affect simulation results from 1994-2006. A LRW P input parameters sensitivity analysis ranking was used to make decisions on parameters of priority focus to optimize the objective function that describes the model efficiency. Model results showed high sensitivity to soil solution P concentration (SOL-LAB-P), adsorption coefficient of P (PHOSKD) and the P sorption coefficient (PSP) (Figure 4-2).

The soil P concentration was the most sensitive parameter for simulating P losses. Development of an extensive spatial database of STP, along with particulate and solution P ratios in runoff, are needed to improve model performance and its usefulness for practical management purposes.

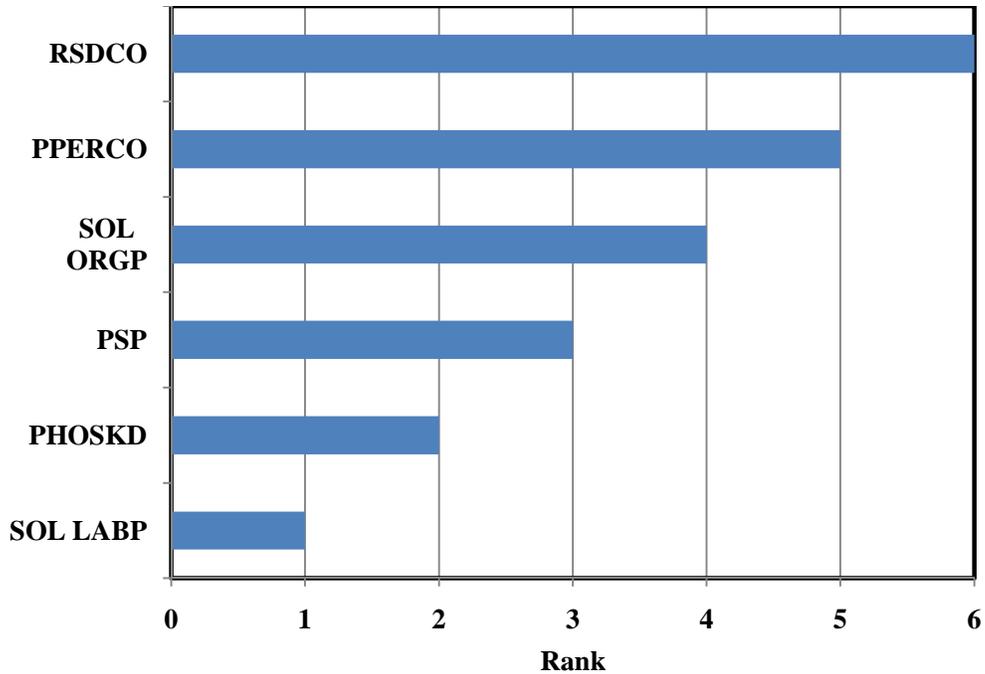


Figure 4-2: Relative sensitivity of P related parameters

### 4.3.2. Calibration and Validation of Phosphorus

The LRW SWAT modeling calibrated phosphorus input parameters and their respective values are shown in Table 4-1. Phosphorus calibration in the Beauford sub-watershed showed good agreement between predicted and measured total phosphorus loads at the outlet of the watershed, with an NSE value of 0.79 (Figure 4-3). Even though the observed NSE value is acceptable, the predicted P load was 39% less than measured. The under-prediction was mainly during peak snowmelt months and was consistent with model under-predictions of hydrology and sediment in those same months.

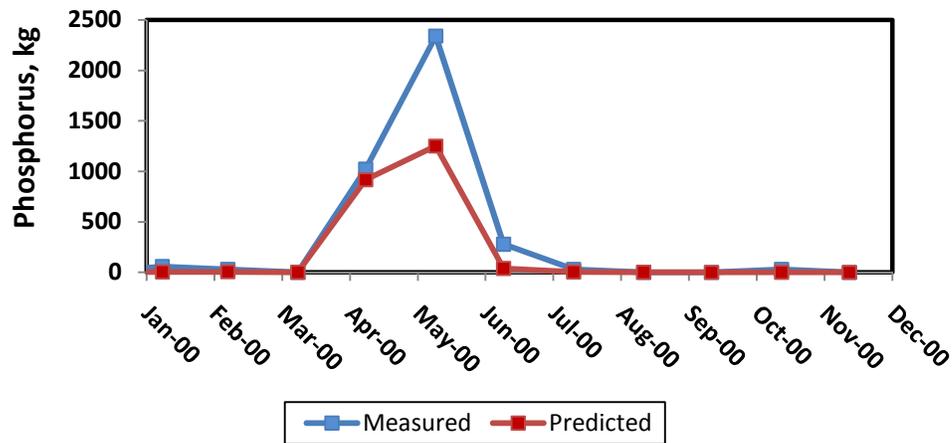


Figure 4-3: Phosphorus calibration in the Beauford Sub-watershed.

The predicted average monthly total phosphorus loading in the Beauford and LRW were 56% and 77% of their respective measured average monthly loadings (Figures 4-4 and 4-5). Validation NSE values for the total monthly phosphorus loadings were 0.76 and 0.67 in the Beauford sub-watershed and LRW, respectively (Figures 4-6 and 4-7). The largest errors in SWAT model phosphorus predictions were always associated with peak flow prediction errors. Under-prediction of P loads could also be due to the fact that P from stream banks and atmospheric deposition were not accounted for in the SWAT model.

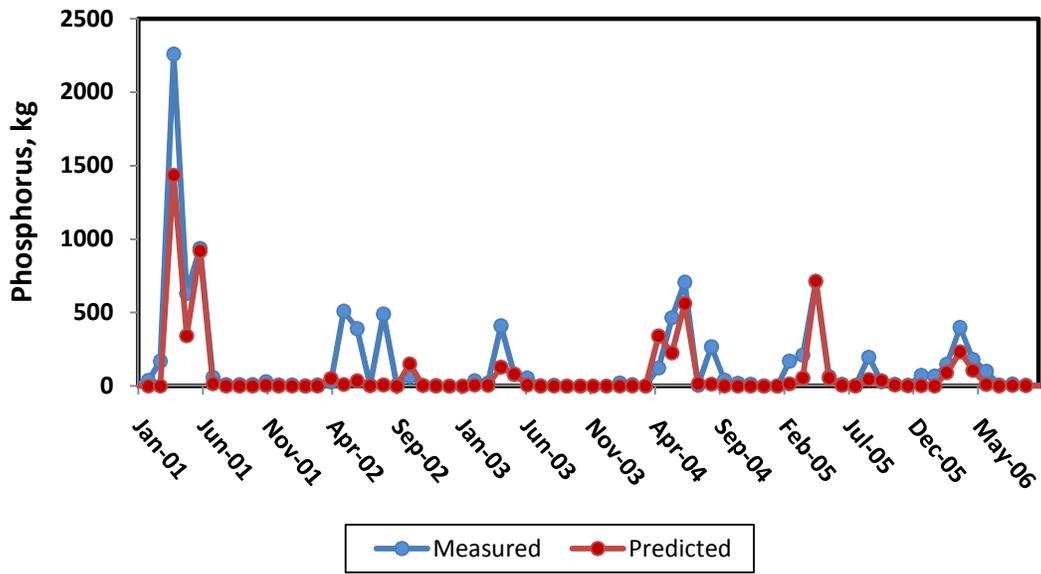


Figure 4-4: Monthly Phosphorus Loss Validation in the Beauford Sub-watershed

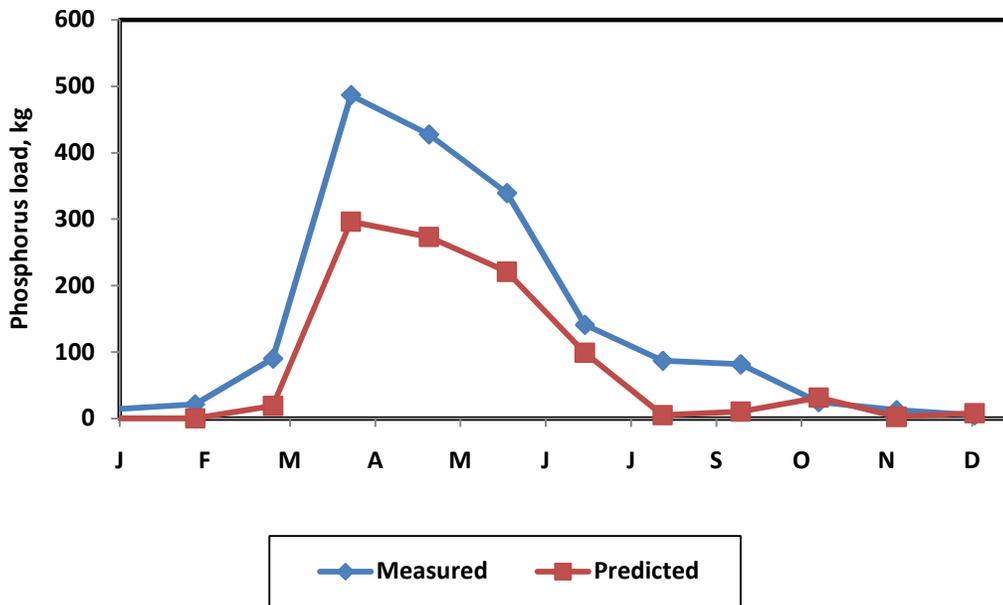


Figure 4-5: Average Monthly Phosphorus Loss Validation in the Beauford Sub-watershed (2001-2006)

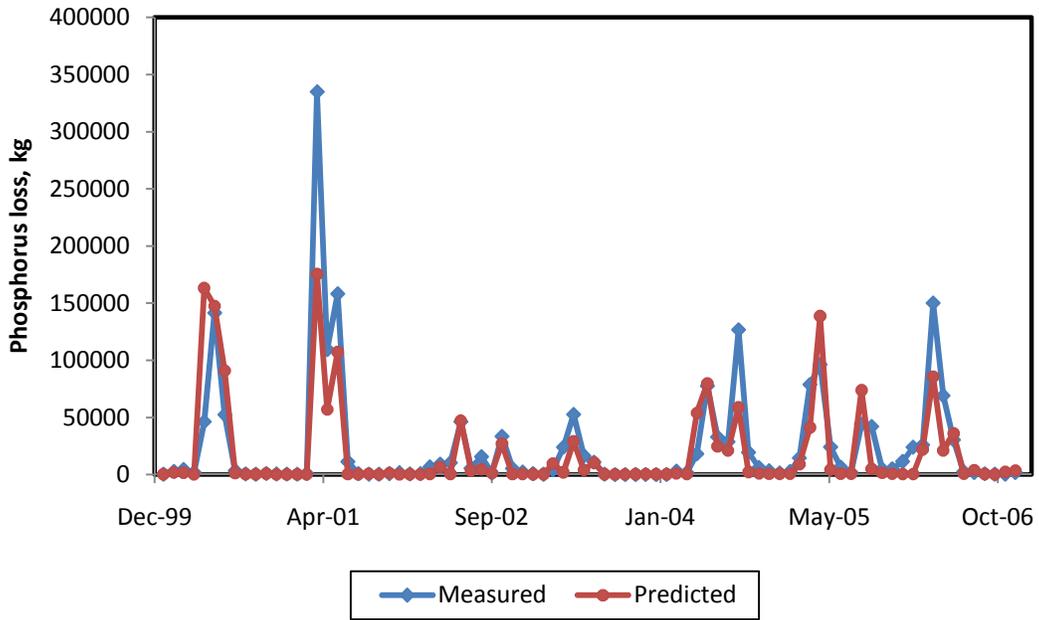


Figure 4-6: Monthly Phosphorus Loss Validations in the LRW

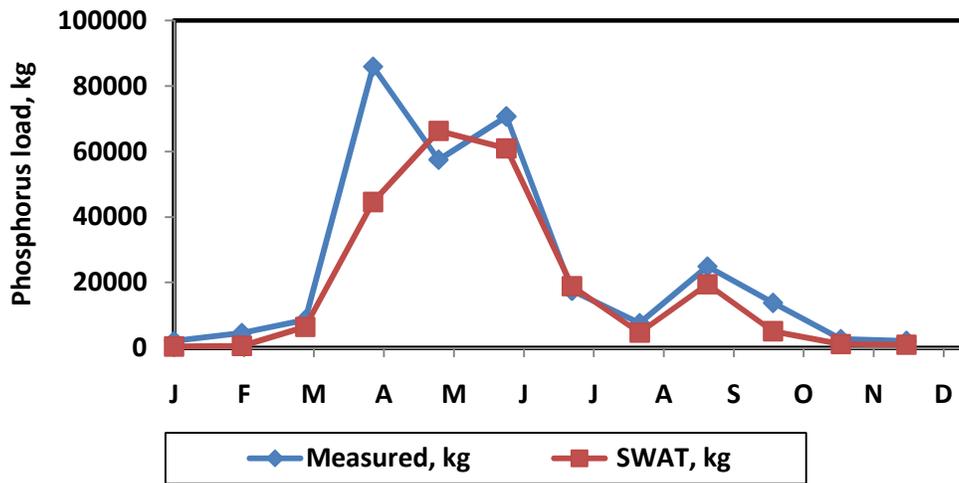


Figure 4-1: Monthly Phosphorus Loss Validation in the LRW (2000-2006)

Table 4-1: Summary of calibrated phosphorus parameters in the LRW SWAT model

Variable	Description	File	Default	Calibrated
P_UPDIS	P uptake distribution parameter.	bsn	20	84
PPERCO	P percolation coefficient ( $10 \text{ m}^3/\text{Mg}$ ).	bsn	10	15
PHOSKD	P soil partitioning coefficient ( $\text{m}^3/\text{Mg}$ ).	bsn	175	190
PSP	P availability index.	bsn	0.4	0.27
RSDCO	Residue decomposition coefficient	bsn	0.05	0.05
SOL SOLP	Initial soluble P concentration in soil layer (mg P/kg soil or ppm).	.chm	5	Variable
SOL ORGP	Initial organic P concentration in soil layer (mg P/kg soil or ppm).	.chm	0-1500	Variable
ERORGP	P enrichment ratio for loading with sediment.	.hru	0	Variable
FILTERW	Width of edge-of-field filter strip (m).	.mgt	0	Variable
BIOMIX	Biological mixing efficiency.	.mgt	0.2	Variable
<b>FERTILIZER APPLICATION</b>		.mgt		
FMINP	Fraction of mineral P in fertilizer (kg min-P/kg fertilizer).	fert.dat	0-1	Variable
FORGP	Fraction of organic P in fertilizer (kg org-P/kg fertilizer).	fert.dat	0-1	Variable
<b>TILLAGE OPERATION</b>		.mgt		
EFFMIX	Mixing efficiency of tillage operation.	till.dat	Variable	Variable
DEPTIL	Depth of mixing caused by the tillage operation (mm)	till.dat	Variable	Variable
CPYLD	Normal fraction of P in yield (kg P/kg yield).	crop.dat	Variable	Variable
PLTPFR(1)	Fraction of P in plant biomass at Emergence (kg N/kg biomass)	crop.dat	Variable	Variable
PLTPFR(2)	Fraction of P in plant biomass at 50% maturity (kg N/kg biomass)	crop.dat	Variable	Variable
PLTPFR(3)	Fraction of P in plant biomass at maturity (kg N/kg biomass)	crop.dat	Variable	Variable
GWSOLP	Concentration of soluble P in groundwater (mg P/L or ppm)	.gw	Variable	Variable

### 4.3.3. Phosphorus Yield and Source Areas

The SWAT simulation results showed that the highest phosphorus losses (0.22-0.28 kg/ha/month) occur in the peak flow months from April to June. This accounts for 75% of the total annual loss. About 85% of the P losses occurred in the particulate or sediment bound form. The dissolved P was only about 15% (Table 4-2). Total P loss is strongly correlated with total sediment yield with an  $R^2$  value of 0.69. There was not a strong relation with water discharge. Organic P losses showed a strong linear relationship with sediment flux ( $R^2$  value of 0.79) in the LRW. Agricultural row crop producing fields accounted for 99% of the predicted total phosphorus loading to surface waters of the LRW.

Average monthly phosphorus load in the LRW was estimated using the USGS LOADEST program. The monthly maximum loss (83,000 kg) occurred in the month of April (Figure 4-9). Based on 446 samples tested from 1999-2006, the maximum average monthly concentration (0.61 mg/L) was recorded in the month of June. The loss of phosphorus is affected by several factors, including the occurrence, amount and intensity of rainfall and runoff, P application amount and timing, and land management practices such as tillage.

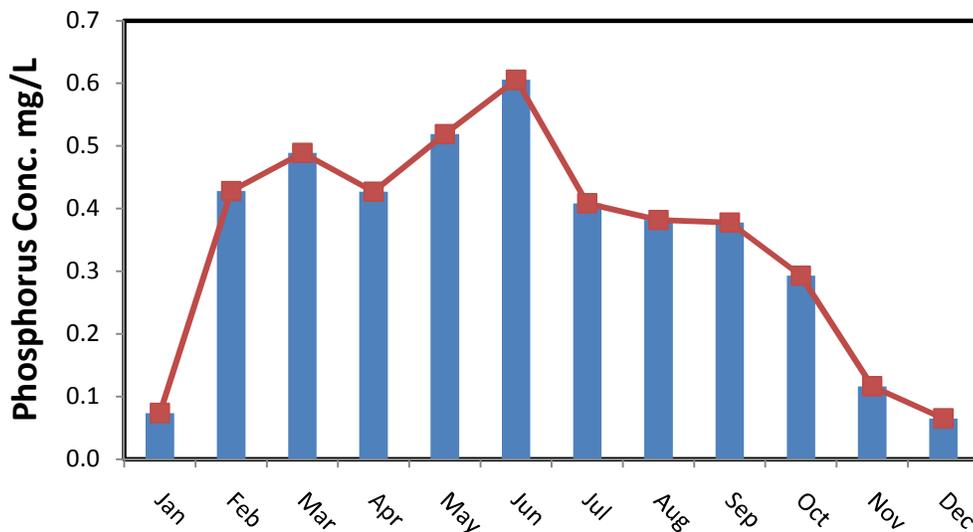


Figure 4-8: Monthly average phosphorus concentration in the LRW

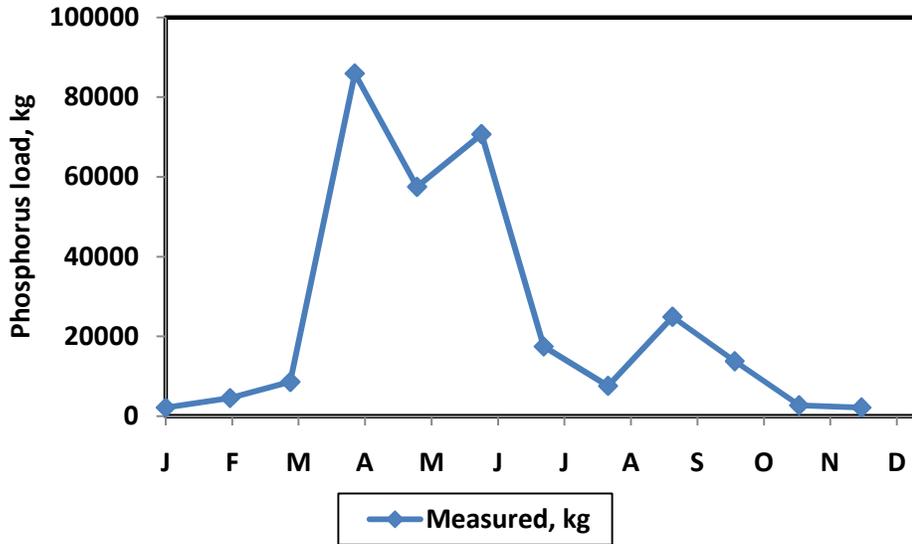


Figure 4-9: Monthly average phosphorus load in the LRW

The annual discharge of total P from the LRW varied during the period from 1994-2006. The predicted lowest annual phosphorus loss of  $0.44 \text{ kg ha}^{-1}$  occurred in 2002, and the highest annual losses of  $2.01 \text{ kg ha}^{-1}$  occurred in 2001. The mean annual total P loss across all years was  $1.02 \text{ kg ha}^{-1}$  (Table 4-2 ).

Table 4-2: Annual Phosphorus Loss in the LRW (kg/ha)

Year	ORGANIC P	SEDIMENT P	SOLUBLE P	Total P
1994	0.19	0.31	0.08	0.59
1995	0.18	0.31	0.10	0.59
1996	0.24	0.43	0.12	0.79
1997	0.23	0.34	0.10	0.66
1998	0.20	0.31	0.10	0.62
1999	0.42	0.76	0.18	1.37
2000	0.57	1.14	0.27	1.98
2001	0.68	1.07	0.26	2.01
2002	0.13	0.23	0.07	0.44
2003	0.07	0.14	0.05	0.27
2004	0.41	0.75	0.20	1.37
2005	0.46	0.85	0.23	1.55
2006	0.33	0.52	0.14	0.99
Average	0.32	0.55	0.15	1.02

The northern and eastern portions of the watershed have the highest P loss rates (Figure 30). Those are areas that have steep slopes, high surface runoff and high sediment losses (Figures 13, 20 & 21). The Upper Le Sueur major sub-watershed has the highest annual sediment yield of 1.35 kg/ha and contributes about 64% of the P loss, although it has only about 40% of the total area. The other two major sub-watersheds, Maple and Big Cobb, contribute 20% and 16%, respectively. Roughly 30% of the LRW contributes 50% of the phosphorus load (Figure 4-10)

Table 4-3: Phosphorus loss in the major sub-watersheds of LRW

Reach	Area, ha	ORGANIC P, kg	MINERAL P, kg	Total P, kg
LRW	285676	104100	102000	206100
Upper Le Sueur	115286	79180	76420	155600
Big Cobb	79955	19720	19670	39390
Maple	88081	25930	23130	49060

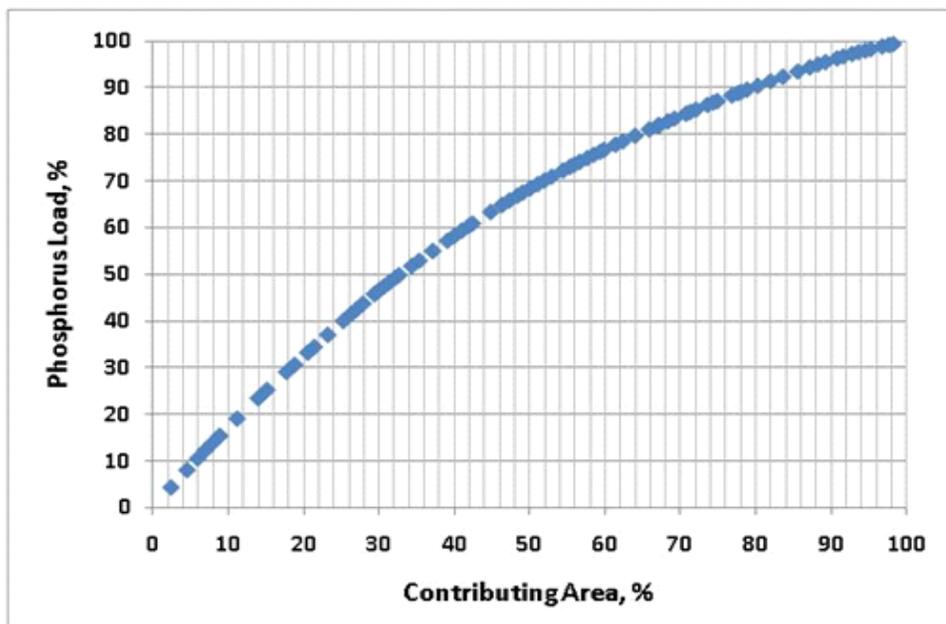


Figure 4-10: Phosphorus contributing area vs load.

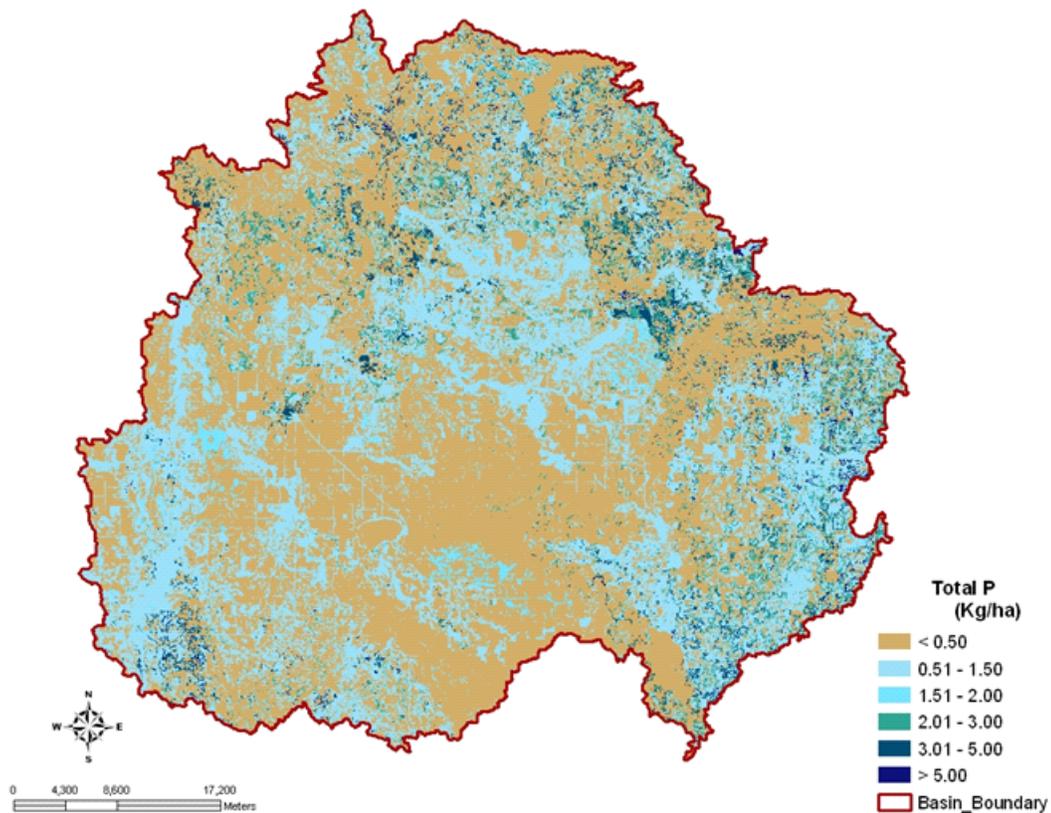


Figure 4-11: Spatial distribution of phosphorus loss in the LRW

#### 4.3.4. Phosphorus Budget

The mineralization of organic P from soil humus, crop residue and microbial biomass of the LRW was estimated at about 24.3 kg/ha. Since crop uptake was 29 kg/ha/year and surface losses were about 1kg/ha/year, P applications from fertilizer and manure should not have exceeded 7 kg/ha/year. However, the annual phosphorus application in the LRW is about 38 kg/ha, and animal manure accounts for 15% of the total. Considering the annual uptake and losses in runoff, there is an accumulation of 11 kg/ha/year phosphorus in the LRW (Table 4-4 ).

The role of point sources has been accounted for in the loss estimates at the mouth of LRW. The average annual mineral phosphorus released from point sources was about 185 kg. This is about 0.001% of the annual loss from the entire watershed.

Table 4-4: LRW Phosphorus Budget

<b>INPUTS</b>	(kg/ha)	%
P FERTILIZER APPLIED (Min Fertilizer and Manure)	38.4	61.2
MIN OF FRESH ORG P (Residue and Microbial biomass)	14.5	23.2
MIN OF ORG P (HUMUS)	9.8	15.6
<b>TOTAL</b>	62.7	100.0
<b>OUTPUTS</b>	(kg/ha)	%
P UPTAKE	29.0	55.8
Adsorbed P	21.9	42.2
Soluble P loss	0.15	0.3
Sediment P loss	0.55	1.1
Organic P loss	0.32	0.6
Point Source P loss	0.001	0.002
<b>TOTAL</b>	51.99	100.00

$$\text{Change in storage} = \text{Inputs} - \text{Outputs} = 10.8 \text{ kg/ha}$$

The annual accumulation of 10.8 kg/ha phosphorus in upland soils of the LRW may affect freshwater ecosystems in the long run. The adverse effects of P on freshwater at downstream of sources could occur after several years of accumulation of P in soil (Reed-Andersen et al., 2000). Daniel et al. (1994) and Sharpley et al. (1994) reported that all factors that increase erosion or the concentration of P in the soil also increase the potential for P losses. Therefore, the current P accumulation rate in the LRW could have a very dangerous effect on the LRW water quality in the long run.

#### 4.3.5. Phosphorus BMPs

Phosphorus concentration at the soil surface and increases in runoff are the two major factors that increase phosphorus losses in runoff (Sharpley et al., 2003). Thus, all practices that can reduce these two factors can reduce the loss of P.

Application of 56 kg/ha of P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, from both animal manure and applied DAP fertilizer, was evaluated against the baseline application rate of 84 kg/ha P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>. This 34% reduction in application rate reduced the total P loss by about 28% (Table 4-5).

Table 4-5: Relative effects of application of different BMPs in reducing P losses in the LRW

Scenario	CODE	SEDIMENT P	SOLUBLE P	ORGANIC P	Total P
Baseline	BL	0.55	0.15	0.32	1.02
Reduced Rate Application	RRA	0.36	0.09	0.28	0.73
Conservation Tillage on 50% corn land	CT	0.52	0.15	0.3	0.87
No Tillage on 50% corn land	NT	0.4	0.15	0.21	0.76
VFS on CS over 2% slope	VFS	0.18	0.08	0.1	0.36
Rye as cover crop	RCC	0.38	0.13	0.22	0.73

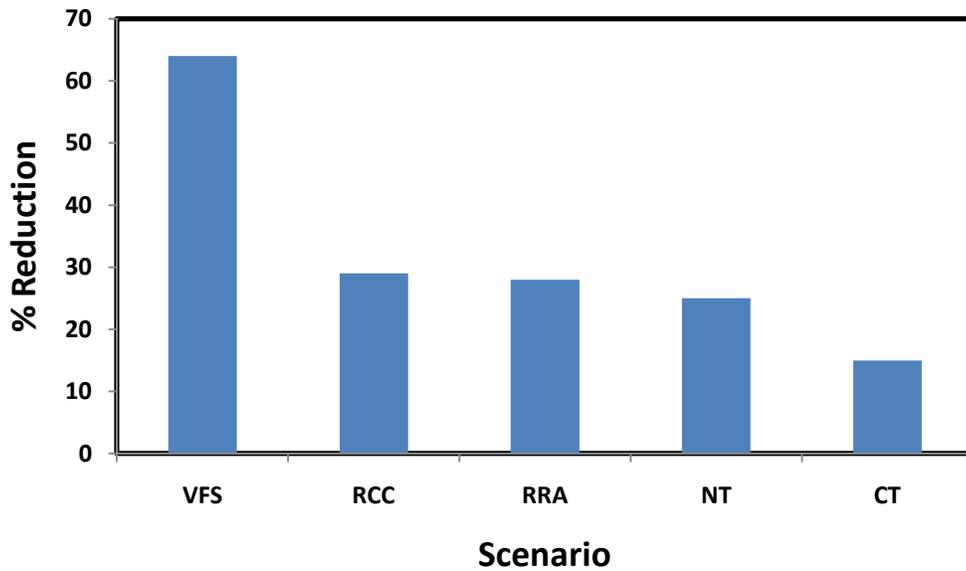


Figure 4-12: BMP scenarios potential to reduce the total P losses of the LRW

Cropping systems that maintain at least 30 percent of the soil surface covered with residue after planting can help to reduce soil erosion and the associated P loss. Application of conservation tillage on 50% of the corn residue in the year before soybean planting reduced P losses by 15%. The reduction was mainly due to reductions in the particulate phosphorus loss. On the other hand, direct seeding of soybean into corn

residue without tillage showed a 25% reduction in P losses. This is mainly a result of an increase in infiltration rates and reduction in soil erosion. Application of no-till reduced sediment adsorbed P, but increased soluble P losses. Nevertheless, no-tillage is not recommended on most soils in the LRW because of negative effects on crop yield.

Establishment of vegetative grass strips on corn-soybean fields with slopes steeper than 2% showed the highest P loss reduction potential of 64%. Another effective management practice was planting rye as a fall cover crop. Cover cropping reduced phosphorus losses by 29%, mainly through reducing surface runoff from the soil.

#### **4.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS**

The average annual phosphorus concentrations in the Minnesota River and the Le Sueur River over the years 2000 - 2005 were 0.34 mg/L and 0.47 mg/L, respectively. The P yield of the LRW is the highest of all the major tributaries in the Minnesota River Basin. A modeling study that could contribute towards mitigating high P losses from the Minnesota River Basin and severe contamination of water resources from Lake Pepin to the Gulf of Mexico is very timely. This study was conducted in the LRW with the objectives of investigating the level of P contamination, P source areas and best management practices.

The SWAT model was used to simulate P dynamics in the LRW, based on pre-calibration and validation of the model for hydrology and sediment transport processes. The initial concentrations of soluble and particulate P in the soils of the LRW, and the P enrichment ratio for loading with sediment were the most sensitive model input parameters. The P calibration and validation NSE values were 0.77 and 0.67, respectively. Since channel sources contribute about 70% of the annual sediment yield in the LRW, neglecting channel P losses by the SWAT model was a big limitation on model efficiency.

The LRW annual phosphorus application from fertilizer and manure was about 38 kg/ha. Applied mineral fertilizer, animal manure and P from point sources accounted for 85%, 15% and less than 0.001%, respectively. Model estimated annual total P losses averaged 1.02 kg/ha from 1994-2006. There is a soil P accumulation of 11 kg/ha/year. Steeply sloping lands in the northern and eastern parts of the watershed have the highest annual P yields, exceeding 2 kg/ha/year. These areas are situated in the Upper Le Sueur major sub-watershed. Application of vegetative filter strips on targeted areas of the LRW reduced P losses by 64%. P losses in the LRW were reduced by 25-30% relative to baseline conditions by reducing P application rates by 34% or implementing no tillage on 50% of corn fields, or planting rye as a cover crop. P losses were reduced by 15% with conservation tillage on 50% of corn fields.

## **Chapter 5 : SWAT MODELING OF LE SUEUR RIVER WATERSHED NITROGEN DYNAMICS**

## SYNOPSIS

Physically based deterministic models are useful tools that can be used to simulate spatial and temporal dynamics of nitrate-N within a watershed. These models can be used to identify relative importance of alternative best management practices that can reduce nitrate-N water quality impacts. In this study, the SWAT model was used to understand the sources, transport and fate of nitrate-N in the LRW.

The LRW soil organic and mineral nitrogen concentrations and rates of mineralization were the most sensitive model parameters based on the organic matter contents of the different soil layers. The monthly calibration and validation of nitrate-N in the Beauford sub-watershed gave NSE values of 0.74 and 0.77, respectively. The calibrated parameters were transferred to the LRW, a 285,000 ha watershed in South Central Minnesota. Evaluation of the SWAT model after transfer of parameters to the LRW showed good agreement between predicted and observed nitrate-N loads, with an NSE value of 0.74.

The LRW has an annual riverine nitrate-N loss of 17.6 kg/ha/year. Temporal variations in nitrate losses in the LRW were strongly related to variations in water yield and tile flow. Nitrate-N losses peak during the period from March to May at 1.5-3.5 kg/ha/month. This period is characterized by large discharges due to snow melt and tile flow. Overall, the calculated nitrogen mass balance showed a net gain of 0.8 kg/ha/yr. Despite the big losses of nitrate-N from the LRW, there is no net depletion of watershed soil nitrogen. Reduced rates of nitrogen fertilizer application and winter cover crops were effective at reducing nitrate losses.

## 5.1. INTRODUCTION

Nitrogen (N) is the most abundantly available element in the atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere. However, it is the least readily available element to sustain life; and living organisms require it in large amounts. Less than 1% of the global N stock is available to more than 99% of living organisms (Galloway et al., 2003). The nitrogen in our environment is almost entirely in the form of molecular nitrogen, which cannot be used by most organisms. Breaking the triple bond holding together the two nitrogen atoms requires a significant amount of energy. This strong bond can only be broken under high-temperature processes or by a small number of specialized nitrogen fixing microbes (Galloway et al., 2003).

There is extensive spatial and temporal variability in soil nitrate concentrations, caused by local variations in the nitrogen cycle processes of mineralization, immobilization, nitrification, denitrification, leaching, and plant uptake etc. These processes are difficult to characterize at the watershed scale using measurements collected one time at a single site (Khan et al., 2001). For this reason, application of physically based deterministic continuous models, including the SWAT model, have been commonly used to estimate nitrogen dynamics of a watershed (Krysanova and Arnold, 2008).

Despite the minimal availability of nitrate-N, some studies have indicated that the nitrogen inputs to terrestrial systems have approximately doubled over the last 50 years (Vitousek et al., 1997). This has resulted in eutrophication of water resources, severe hypoxia, and decline in aquatic fisheries. Agricultural sources of nitrogen are the major causes of surface and ground water contamination in USA and Europe (Kolpin et al., 1999).

The loss of nitrogen to surface and ground water resources has been cited as one of the major causes of water resources contamination on all continents (Vitousek et al., 1997). The global nitrate-N fluxes and concentrations in water bodies are affected by changes in the global nitrogen cycle. This is mainly attributed to changes in the production and

usage of nitrogen fertilizers, cultivation of nitrogen-fixing legumes, the increase in human population and urbanization (Galloway, 1998). Howarth et al. (2002) showed that there is a consistent increase in reactive nitrogen delivery from the continental US to coastal oceans through riverine export. They estimated a 67% increase in the reactive annual nitrogen flux in the year 1997 compared to the year 1961. According to their forecast, there will be a 116% increase by the year 2030 (Howarth et al., 2002).

The Mississippi and Atchafalaya Rivers that drain over 41% of the conterminous United States are the primary riverine sources of freshwater and nutrients discharged to the Gulf of Mexico. Nitrate concentrations in the Mississippi River have increased by more than two fold since the 1950s (Justić et al., 1995; Rabalais et al., 1996). Nitrate-N concentrations in agricultural drainage lines of several watersheds in the Midwestern Corn Belt often exceeded the USEPA maximum concentration limit (MCL) of 10 mg/L for drinking water (Baker et al., 1975; Gast et al., 1978; Jaynes et al., 2001). This severe increase in nitrate flux resulted from the increased application of N-fertilizers. McIsaac et al. (2002) estimated that a 33% decrease in nitrogen flux could be achieved with a 12% decrease in N-fertilizer use in the Mississippi River basin.

Local, regional and global scale contamination of water resources as caused by nitrogen loadings needs to be investigated so as to develop appropriate remedies. Identifying best management practices that can reduce nitrate-N contamination of water resources based on targeted source areas is important to mitigate the problem.

### **5.1.1. Problem Statement**

The mean annual nitrate concentration of 122 samples taken from the Minnesota River Basin during 1980-1996 was 4.19 mg/l. This is a 13 fold increase over the concentrations typical of the early 1900's (Goolsby et al., 2000). According to Magner et al. (2004), the high nitrate flux in the Upper Mississippi River in general, and the Minnesota River basin in particular, is due not only to the effect of increases in fertilizer use, but also due to the expansion of sub-surface drainage technology. Skaggs et al.

(2003) showed similar results, and further indicated that nitrogen losses increase with deeper installation of tiles drains. They recommended installing drains at shallow depths with close spacing.

Subsurface tile drainage is a common agricultural practice in the flat landscapes and poorly drained soils of the LRW. Subsurface tile drainage lowers the water table and soil saturation, thereby avoiding subsequent crop damage (Magner et al., 2004). According to Randall et al. (1995) the annual nitrate-N loss through subsurface drainage ranges from 1.4 to 139 kg/ha at Waseca in the LRW. This variability depends on variations in climate and cropping system (Randall and Iragavarapu, 1995). The high nitrogen losses in tile drainage from upland agricultural areas of the LRW detrimentally affect downstream water quality.

Intensive monitoring and sample analysis of LRW streams for nitrate-N have been conducted for the last several years. Monitoring all water resources in watersheds can be time consuming, very expensive and labor intensive. However, monitored data over a limited time span can be used as a basis for the application of watershed models. Models can be useful tools for simulating spatial and temporal variability of nitrate-N contaminants in the LRW, and more importantly, identifying relative importance of different management practices. The SWAT modeling approach was selected for this study to understand the sources, transport and fate of nitrogen from the LRW.

### **5.1.2. Objectives**

The specific objectives of the study are:

- Evaluate the ability of SWAT to simulate nitrogen in the LRW
- Understand major processes triggering nitrogen loss
- Quantify the spatial and temporal dynamics of nitrogen transport and loss
- Evaluate the impact of selected BMPs on nitrate-N losses

### **5.1.3. Models of Nitrogen Dynamics**

In order to mitigate nitrogen contamination, better understanding of spatial and temporal processes of watershed scale nitrogen dynamics and the effects of specific nitrogen source areas are needed. Thus, several models of nitrogen dynamics have been developed to understand the processes of nitrogen transport and fate. Models can be used to identify nitrogen source areas, predict the extent of contamination of water resources and to give decisions on how to manage nitrogen related pollution problems. Nitrogen simulation is a very complex task, because nitrogen dynamics processes represented in models require significant input data which are often not available.

Most recent nitrogen models, including HSPF (Bicknell et al., 1997), SWAT (Srinivasan et al., 1998), AGNPS (Young et al., 1989) and ADAPT (Chung et al., 2001), are mechanistic, comprehensive and include most processes of the nitrogen cycle. The HSPF and SWAT models are complex deterministic models that can describe nitrogen availability, transport, and attenuation processes in detail (Alexander et al., 2002). They have algorithms that can describe the spatial and temporal variations of watershed nitrogen sources and sinks. The SWAT model was developed from models such as GLEAMS (Leonard et al., 1987), CREAMS (Knisel, 1980), SWRRB (Williams et al., 1985), QUAL2E (Brown and Barnwell, 1987), EPIC (Williams et al., 1984), LEACHM (USDA-ARS, 1992), RZWQM (USDA-ARS, 1992), and DRAINMOD-N (Breve et al., 1997) etc.

Several water quality modeling studies were conducted in the Minnesota River Basin and the LRW. These studies were made either at field or watershed scale, some of them focused on nitrogen loading estimations, identification of source areas and evaluation of best management practices. Mulla et al. (2003) used the ADAPT model in the Beauford sub-watershed of the LRW. They concluded that changes in application rate of nitrogen fertilizer from 120 kg/ha to 160 kg/ha would increase nitrate-N losses by 5 to 6 kg/ha/year. Gowda et al. (2007) used the ADAPT model in Bevens and Sand Creek watersheds, where they found that a 30% reduction in nitrate losses could be attained by

shifting the application time from fall to spring . A soil-plant-atmosphere model called RyeGro model has been used in southwestern Minnesota to investigate the effects of cereal rye ( *Secale cereale* L.) as a cover crop on nitrate-N losses from artificial subsurface drainage systems. Feyereisen et al. (2005) and Deliman et al. (2001) have tested the functionality of HSPF-WMS in the LRW. Chung et al. (2001) have used the EPIC model to study the relative impacts of three cropping systems (continuous corn (CC), corn–soybean (CS), and continuous alfalfa (CA)) on nitrogen losses.

#### **5.1.4. Nitrogen Simulation Processes in SWAT Model**

The dynamic processes of nitrogen cycle in the soils, water and atmosphere are challenging to model. The SWAT model simulation of nitrogen can account for transport and transformation processes in the soil profile and the shallow aquifer, roughly up to a depth of 20 m. Two inorganic ( $\text{NH}_4^+$  and  $\text{NO}_3^-$ ) and three organic (fresh organic nitrogen from crop residue and microbial biomass, active and stable organic nitrogen from the soil humus) pools of nitrogen are simulated by the SWAT model (Neitsch et al., 2002; Neitsch et al., 2005).

The different processes modeled by SWAT in the HRUs and the various pools of nitrogen in the soil are depicted in Figure 5-1. Plant use of nitrogen is estimated using the supply and demand approach described in the section on plant growth.

The soil nitrogen content, both organic nitrogen and nitrate-N, in all soil layers needs to be defined by the user or estimated by the SWAT model for simulation of nitrogen. Nitrogen in the soil humus is divided into active and stable pools.

SWAT describes nitrogen transport and loss processes by simulating nitrogen availability, transport, and attenuation processes using mechanistic functions. The model describes the spatial and temporal variations of sources and sinks within a watershed on a continuous time frame.

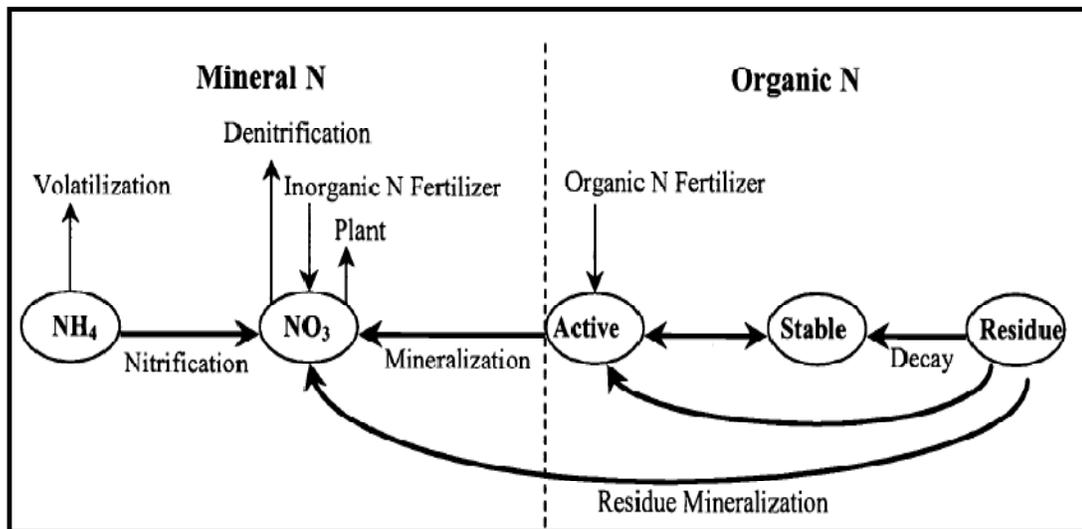


Figure 5-1: SWAT soil nitrogen processes (Source: (Neitsch et al., 2005))

## 5.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

### 5.2.1. Study Area

The LRW is part of the Minnesota River basin which was formed at the end of the last glacial period some twelve thousand years ago. During the last glaciations, the southern end of Glacial Lake Agassiz flowed southeast as Glacial River Warren, and formed the current Minnesota River (Waters, 1980).

The LRW is a predominantly agricultural watershed that produces corn-soybean in two year rotations. Nitrogen fertilizer is applied to corn crops in greater quantity than any other fertilizer and contributes greatly to the agricultural economy of South-Central Minnesota crop producers. The sources of nitrogen include application from animal manure and/or mineral fertilizer. Soils in this region also have high organic matter content and poor drainage, which requires intensive tile drainage. Consequently, there is high nitrate-N flux from the watershed.

### 5.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis

The nitrogen model development was made after calibration and validation of SWAT's hydrology and sediment components. Organization of input data specific to nitrogen

including the time, rate and sources of fertilizer applied, application methods and tillage operations. The management operations file was organized based on knowledge about the watershed and a farm survey made by the Minnesota Department of Agriculture.

Monitoring results for nitrogen collected by the Met Council and the Minnesota Department of Agriculture for the period from 1994 to 2006 were used to calibrate and validate the model. Monthly calibration was made on the Beauford sub-watershed for the year 2000, and validation was made over the years 2001-2006 in the Beauford sub-watershed, and from 1994 -2006 in the LRW. Procedures similar to those used in hydrology and sediment predictions were applied for sensitivity analysis, and calibration and validation of nitrogen.

#### **5.2.3.1. Data Analysis**

The nitrate-nitrogen and organic nitrogen contents of all soil layers were estimated based on the organic matter content and bulk density of each layer following the procedures of Dinnes et al. (2002). It was assumed that the soil organic matter (SOM) in the top 30 cm of soil had a C/N ratio of 10:1 and a mass of  $4.5 \times 10^6$  kg / ha. Therefore every 1% SOM had 4500 kg N/ha or 1,000 mg of nitrogen per one kg of soil mass on average. O'Leary et al. (1990) estimated the amount of nitrate-nitrogen mineralized from soil in southern Minnesota to be 22.5kg/ha/year. These studies were used as the basis to estimate the SOM content of each layer of soils in the LRW, adopted from the SSURGO data base. The estimation for nitrate nitrogen and organic nitrogen content was made using the following two equations:

$$\text{Organic-N} = 100,000 * \text{SOM} \quad (5.1)$$

$$\text{Nitrate-N} = 500 * \text{SOM} \quad (5.2)$$

Where: SOM is the soil organic matter content in %, organic-N is the organic nitrogen content of a soil layer (mg/kg), and nitrate-N is the nitrate-nitrogen content of a soil layer (mg/kg).

## **Decomposition, Mineralization and Immobilization**

The nitrogen mineralization algorithms in SWAT are net mineralization algorithms which incorporate immobilization into the equations. The algorithms were adapted from the PAPRAN mineralization model (Seligman and Keulen, 1981). Once the soil organic and mineral nitrogen contents are defined, SWAT estimates the mineralization and immobilization based on the C:N ratio relationship. The kinetics of decomposition of crop residues and mineralization of nitrogen it contains are largely influenced by the quality of the plant materials, mainly the C:N ratio (Constantinides and Fownes, 1994), and the content of lignin and polyphenols ((Oglesby and Fownes, 1992).

When the C:N ratio is less than 20 there will be mineralization, and a net gain in soil  $\text{NH}_4^+$  and  $\text{NO}_3^-$ . For ratios between 20 and 30, mineralization and immobilization rates are in equilibrium, and there is no net gain or loss of N. when the C:N ratio is greater than 30, N is limited and net immobilization occurs with uptake and loss of N from the active pool.

Decomposition from the residue fresh organic N pool which will add to the humus active organic pool in the layer is calculated by:

$$N_{dec.ly} = 0.2 * \delta_{ntr.ly} * \text{orgN}_{frsh.ly} \quad (5.3)$$

Where  $N_{dec.ly}$  is the nitrogen decomposed from fresh organic N pool (kg N/ha),  $\delta_{ntr.ly}$ , is the residue decay rate constant, and  $\text{orgN}_{frsh.ly}$  is the nitrogen in the fresh organic pool (kg N/ha).

Mineralization from the humus active organic N pool which will be added to the nitrate pool in the layer is calculated as:

$$N_{mina.ly} = \beta_{min} (\gamma_{tmp.ly} * \gamma_{sw.ly})^{1/2} * \text{orgN}_{act.ly} \quad (5.4)$$

Where  $N_{mina.ly}$  the nitrogen mineralized from the humus active organic N pool (kg N/ha),  $\beta_{min}$ , is the rate coefficient for mineralization of the humus active

organic nutrients,  $\gamma_{tmp.ly}$  is, the nutrient cycling temperature factor for layer,  $\gamma_{sw.ly}$  is the nutrient cycling water factor for layer and  $orgN_{act.ly}$  is the amount of nitrogen in the active organic pool (kg N/ha).

Mineralization from the residue fresh organic N pool which will add to the nitrate pool in the layer is calculated with the equation:

$$N_{minf.ly} = 0.8 * \delta_{ntr.ly} * orgN_{frsh.ly} \quad (5.5)$$

Where  $N_{minf.ly}$  is the nitrogen mineralized from fresh organic N pool (kg N/ha),  $\delta_{ntr.ly}$  is the residue decay rate constant, and  $orgN_{frsh.ly}$  is the nitrogen in the fresh organic pool (kg N/ha).

### **Nitrification, Volatilization, Denitrification and Leaching**

The microbial (Nitrosomonas) conversion of ammonium to nitrite ( $NO_2^-$ ) and then to nitrate ( $NO_3^-$ ) by the Nitrobacter is commonly known as nitrification. Nitrification is a biological process that slows when soil temperatures drop below  $10^\circ C$ . This is why ammonium-forming fertilizers should not be fall applied until soil temperatures are below  $10^\circ C$ . The losses of ammonia to the atmosphere, mainly from some surface-applied nitrogen sources can occur through the process of volatilization. Ammonia is an intermediate form of nitrogen during the process in which applied fertilizer is transformed to  $NH_4^+$ . Soil pH values higher than 7.3 and high air temperatures increase volatilization losses. The total amount of ammonium lost to nitrification and volatilization is calculated in SWAT using a first-order kinetic rate equation developed by Reddy et al. (1979) and Godwin et al. (1984):

$$N_{nit/vol.ly} = NH_{4ly} * (1 - \exp[-\eta_{nit.ly} - \eta_{vol.ly}]) \quad (5.6)$$

Where  $N_{nit/vol.ly}$  is the amount of ammonium converted via nitrification and volatilization in layer (kg N/ha),  $NH_{4ly}$  is the amount of ammonium in layer (kg N/ha),  $\eta_{nit.ly}$  is the nitrification regulator, and  $\eta_{vol.ly}$  is the volatilization regulator.

Denitrification is the process by which bacteria convert nitrate ( $\text{NO}_3^-$ ) to nitrogen gas ( $\text{N}_2$ ), which is lost to the atmosphere. Denitrifying bacteria use  $\text{NO}_3^-$  instead of oxygen in their metabolic processes when the soil atmosphere lacks oxygen. Denitrification occurs in waterlogged soil with ample organic matter to provide energy for bacteria. For these reasons, denitrification generally is limited to topsoil. Denitrification can proceed rapidly when soils are warm and saturated for two or three days.

SWAT determines the amount of nitrate lost to denitrification with the equation:

$$N_{denit.ly} = NO_{3ly} * (1 - \exp[-\beta_{denit} * \gamma_{tmp.ly} * orgC_{ly}]) \quad (5.7)$$

Where  $N_{denit.ly}$  is the amount of nitrogen lost to denitrification (kg N/ha),  $NO_{3ly}$  is the amount of nitrate in layer (kg N/ha),  $\beta_{denit}$  is the rate coefficient for denitrification,  $\gamma_{tmp.ly}$  is the nutrient cycling temperature factor for layer,  $\gamma_{sw.ly}$  is the nutrient cycling water factor for layer,  $orgC_{ly}$  is the amount of organic carbon in the layer (%), and  $\gamma_{sw,thr}$  is the threshold value of nutrient cycling water factor for denitrification to occur.

The risk of nitrate leaching down the soil profile is calculated in SWAT model as a function of the water discharge and residual soil nitrate in the profile. Nitrate is a soluble anion that does not adsorb to soil particles. Nitrate that moves below the root zone has the potential to enter either groundwater or surface water through tile drainage systems. The federal standard for the amount of nitrate allowed in drinking water is 10 ppm.

### **Nitrogen Deposition and Fixation**

Deposition of atmospheric nitrogen can occur in rainfall. SWAT calculates the amount of nitrogen deposition in rainfall based on a user defined coefficient of nitrogen concentration in rain. SWAT also simulates nitrogen fixation by legumes when the soil does not supply the plant with the amount of nitrogen needed for growth. The nitrogen obtained by fixation is incorporated directly into the plant biomass and never enters the soil, unless plant biomass is added to the soil as residue after the plant is killed.

### **Nitrate in the Shallow Aquifer, In-Stream and Tile Drainage**

SWAT accounts for nitrate transformation and loss processes in the shallow aquifer based on the amount of nitrate that reaches the aquifer and a user defined half life of nitrate in the aquifer. The SWAT nitrogen simulation is accomplished for each HRU and then aggregated to the sub-basin, and finally routed to the watershed outlet passing through in stream transformation processes. SWAT uses kinetic routines from the QUAL2E model to simulate in-stream nitrogen dynamics (Brown and Barnwell, 1987). Nitrate losses from the LRW occur largely in tile drainage. Nitrate removed through the tile drainage is calculated using:

$$N_{03_{tile}} = Conc_{NO3, mobile} * Q_{tile} \quad (5.8)$$

Where  $N_{03_{tile}}$  is the nitrate removed in tile flow from a layer (kg N/ha),  $Conc_{NO3_{mobile}}$  is the concentration of nitrate in the mobile water through tiles (kg N/mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and  $Q_{tile}$  the water discharged from the layer by tile drainage (mm H<sub>2</sub>O).

The amount of water removed from a layer in the tile drain on a given day is calculated using:

$$tile_{wtr} = \frac{h_{wtbl} - h_{drain}}{h_{wtbl}} * (SW - FC) [1 - \exp(-\frac{24}{t_{drain}})] \quad (5.9)$$

where  $tile_{wtr}$  is the amount of water removed from the layer on a given day by tile drainage (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $h_{wtbl}$  is the height of the water table above the impervious zone (mm),  $h_{drain}$  is the height of the tile drain above the impervious zone (mm),  $SW$  is the water content of the profile on a given day (mm H<sub>2</sub>O),  $FC$  is the field capacity water content of the profile (mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and  $t_{drain}$  is the time required to drain the soil to field capacity (hrs).

### **Analysis of Nitrogen Budget**

Although SWAT model estimates of the LRW N fluxes are somewhat uncertain, the N budget has been calculated based on a complete mass balance of inputs and outputs.

$$N_{inputs} - N_{outputs} = \text{Change in Soil N Storage } (\Delta N_{Soil}) \quad (5.10)$$

The LRW simulation outputs for the period from 1994-2006 as summarized in the SWAT model standard output file (.std) were used to derive the N inputs and outputs. Applied mineral and manure fertilizers, mineralization of organic matter, residue and microbial biomass, nitrogen deposition and fixation were the pools on the input side. Crop uptake, immobilization, volatilization of ammonia, denitrification, and losses through seepage, subsurface and surface flows were accounted for on the output side.

#### **5.2.3.2. Selection of Nitrogen BMPs**

The selection of nitrogen BMPs was based on field research conducted mainly in the LRW (Randall and Schmitt, 1993). Accordingly, the following five BMPs have been evaluated:

- E. Reduced rate fall/spring nitrogen application so as to meet the University of Minnesota nitrogen fertilization rate guidelines (Rehm et al., 2000).

The baseline application rate of nitrogen fertilizer from both animal manure (33 kg/ha) and applied anhydrous ammonia was 167 kg/ha. In order to meet the University of Minnesota recommendation of 134 kg/ha of nitrogen, fall applied anhydrous and spring applied urea rates were reduced by 20%.

- F. Conservation tillage

A tillage system that leaves at least 30 percent residue after planting corn was applied to 50% of the corn fields in the LRW. Conservation tillage can greatly reduce soil erosion, with minimal effect on crop yields.

- G. Vegetative filter strips (VFS)

VFS was applied on crop land steeper than 2%.

- H. No-tillage

Similar to the conservation tillage no-tillage was applied on 50% corn fields.

- I. Cover Crops: Rye was planted after the October corn harvest to increase uptake of nitrogen from the soil, which otherwise would have been lost in tile drainage.

### 5.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Nitrogen was applied to corn fields of the LRW at a rate of about 134 to 167 kg N/hectare from commercial fertilizer (anhydrous ammonia) and animal manure. Applied nitrogen from animal manure ranges from 20-25% of the total. The application was made following the previous year's soybean crop (Table 5-1).

Table 5-1: Baseline Scheduled Management Operations for Corn-Soybean Rotation

Year	Crop type	Management operation	Date
Year 1	Corn	- Secondary tillage Cultivation (Field Cultivator)	28-Apr
		- Planting corn	1-May
		- 18-46-00 @ 163 lb/ac	1-May
		- Metolachlor application (2.21 lb/ac)	3-May
		- Acetochlor application (1.6 lb/ac)	29-Apr
		- Atrazine application (0.59 lb/ac)	29-Apr
		- Harvest/kill	20-Oct
		- Primary Tillage (Chisel Plow)	25-Oct
Year 2	Soybean	- Secondary tillage Cultivation (Field Cultivator)	May 12
		- Planting soybean	15-May
		- Metolachlor (0.89 lb/ac)	14-May
		- Harvest/kill	7-Oct
		- Primary Tillage (Chisel Plow)	12-Oct
		- Swine fresh manure application	30-Oct
		- Broiler Fresh Manure	24-Apr
		- Dairy fresh manure	30-Oct
- Anhydrous ammonia @ 120 lb/ac (injected)	1-Nov		

#### 5.3.1. Sensitivity Analysis of Nitrogen Parameters

There are over 24 input parameters specific to nitrogen simulation in the SWAT model (Table 5-2). Other parameters like the curve number and USLE factors were calibrated for hydrology and sediment modeling as described in Chapters 2 and 3.

The soil organic and mineral nitrogen concentration and rate of mineralization were the most sensitive parameters. The uncertainty in spatial representation of soil organic

Table 5-2: Input parameters associated with nitrogen

Variable	Description	File	Default	Calibrated
RCN	Concentration of nitrogen in rainfall, mg/L	bsn	1	1.03
CMN	Rate factor for Humus mineralization of active organic nitrogen	bsn	0.0003	0.5
CDN	Denitrification exponential rate coefficient	bsn	0	0.032
SDNCO	Denitrification threshold water content	bsn	0	0.7
N_UPDIS	Nitrogen uptake distribution parameter	bsn	20	35
NPERCO	Nitrogen percolation coefficient	bsn	0.2	0.97
RSDCO	Residue decomposition coefficient	bsn	0.05	0.05
ANION_EXCL	Fraction of porosity from which anions are excluded	.sol	0.5	0.5
SHALLST_N	Ground water nitrate concentration	.gw	0	0.001
SOL_NO3	Soil nitrate concentration	.chm	0	variable
SOL_ORGN	Soil organic nitrogen concentration	.chm	0	variable
SOL_CBN	Organic carbon content	.sol	0	variable
ERORGN	Organic nitrogen enrichment ratio	.hru	0	0.85
<b>FERT_ID</b>	<b>Fertilizer application</b>	.mgt	variable	variable
FMINN	Fraction of mineral N in fertilizer (nitrate and ammonia)	fert.dat	variable	variable
FORGN	Fraction of organic N in fertilizer	fert.dat	variable	variable
FNH3N	Fraction of mineral N in fertilizer as ammonia	fert.dat	variable	variable
<b>TILL_ID</b>	<b>Tillage operation</b>	.mgt	variable	variable
EFFMIX	Mixing efficiency	till.dat	variable	variable
DEPTIL	Depth of mixing caused by tillage operation	till.dat	variable	variable
CNYLD	Fraction of nitrogen in harvested biomass	crop.dat	variable	variable
BN1	Fraction of nitrogen in plant at emergence	crop.dat	variable	variable
BN2	Fraction of nitrogen in plant at 0.5 maturity	crop.dat	variable	variable
BN3	Fraction of nitrogen in plant at maturity	crop.dat	variable	variable

nitrogen is very challenging. Organic nitrogen in soil humus stores over 90% of the nitrogen (Krug and Winstanley, 2002). Nitrate losses were also very sensitive to the humus mineralization rate (CMN). Very slight changes in CMN can result in large errors in the amount of nitrate available for plant and microbial uptake, leaching, denitrification, and ammonia/ammonium available for biological microbial uptake and volatilization. The most sensitive seven parameters were Rate coefficient for mineralization of the residue fresh organic nutrients (RSDCO), Nitrate percolation coefficient (NPERCO), Organic nitrogen enrichment ratio (ERORGN), amount of organic carbon in the soil layer (SOL-CBN), (SOL-NO3), humus mineralization rate (CMN) and Initial NO3 concentration in soil layer (SOL-ORGN) Figure 5-2.

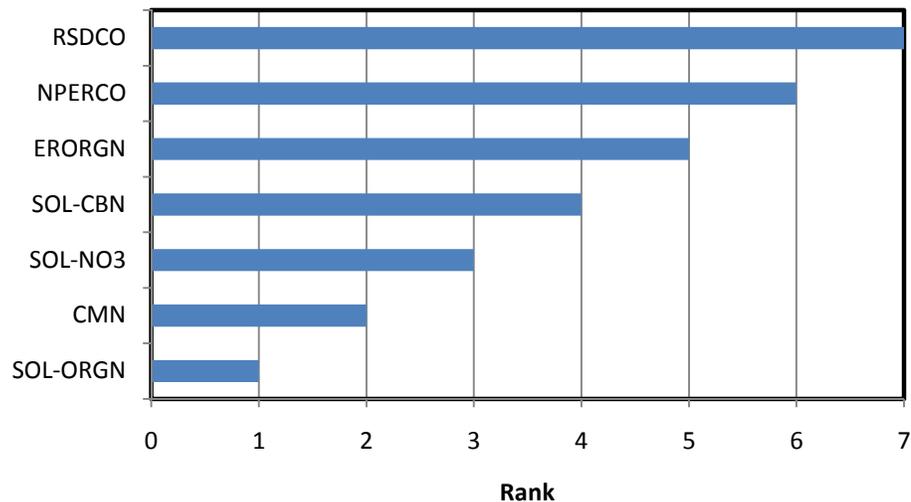


Figure 5-2: Relative sensitivity of nitrogen related parameters

### 5.3.2. Calibration and Validation of Nitrogen

Due to the complexity of the SWAT model nitrogen component and its intensive input data requirements, calibration and validation of the model are very important. The LRW SWAT model calibration and validation was made on a monthly basis using graphical comparisons and Nash–Sutcliffe simulation efficiency (NSE) values.

The SWAT model under-predicted denitrification and organic nitrogen mineralization with default settings for the exponential rate coefficient of denitrification (CDN) and the rate factor for humus mineralization of active organic nitrogen (CMN). Therefore the

CDN and CMN were increased to 0.032 and 0.5 respectively. Changes were also made to the organic nitrogen enrichment ratio and some other default parameters as listed in Table 5-2.

The total monthly calibration of nitrogen in the Beauford sub-watershed gave an NSE value at the outlet of the watershed of 0.74 (Figure 5-3). The ratio of predicted to measured annual N loads was about 89%.

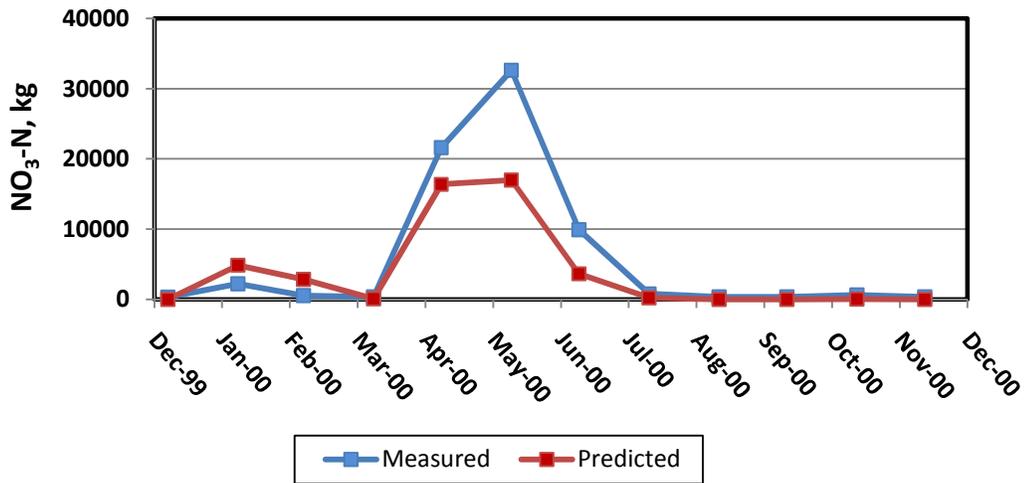


Figure 5-3: Nitrate-Nitrogen calibration in the Beauford Sub-watershed.

The model validation of nitrate-N loads was evaluated in both the Beauford sub-watershed and the entire LRW. The monthly validation NSE values for nitrate-nitrogen loading were 0.77 and 0.74 in the Beauford sub-watershed and LRW, respectively. The ratio of predicted to measured nitrate-N loads were 0.81 and 0.76 in the Beauford sub-watershed and LRW, respectively (Figure 5-4 and Figure 5-5).

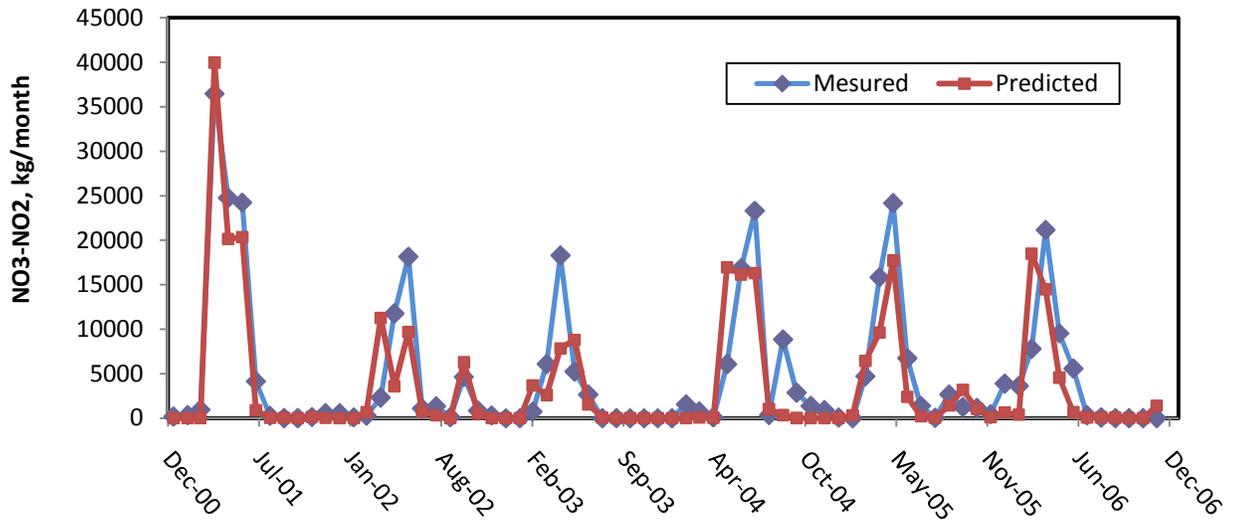


Figure 5-4: Average Monthly Nitrogen Loss Validation in the Beauford Sub-watershed

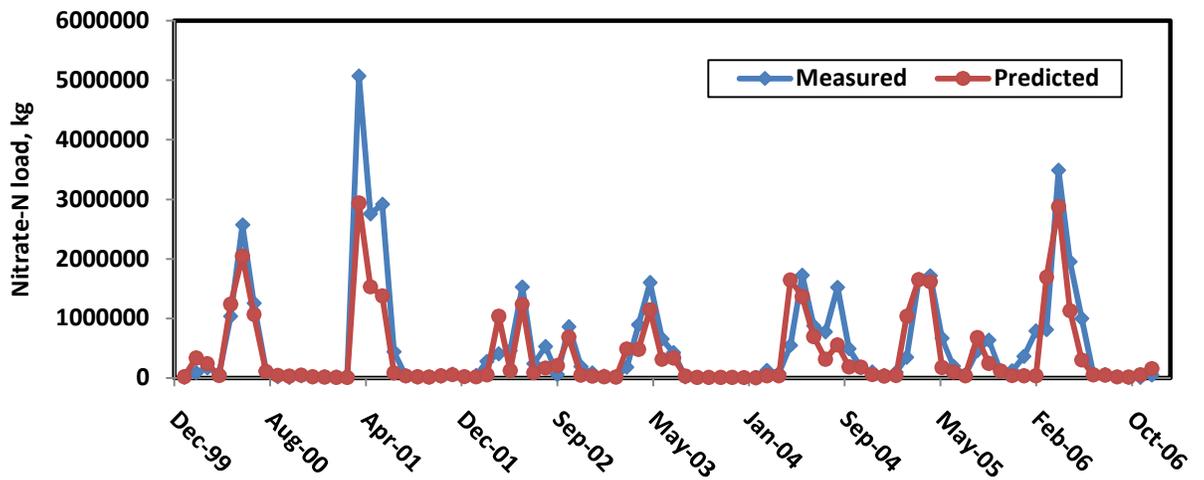


Figure 5-5: Monthly Nitrogen Loss Validations in the LRW

### 5.3.3. Impacts of Hydrology on Nitrate-N Flux

The total monthly and annual precipitation in the LRW were poorly correlated to the nitrate-N losses. Peak rainfall amounts after June did not cause much nitrate-N loss. At this time of year the land is covered by corn and soybeans, and the soil nitrate concentration is low. Snow melt and tile flow peak during the period from March to May, leading to large nitrate-N losses of 1.5-3.5 kg/ha/month (Figure 5-6). Water yield and tile flow in the LRW explained 79% and 89% of the temporal variation in nitrate losses, respectively.

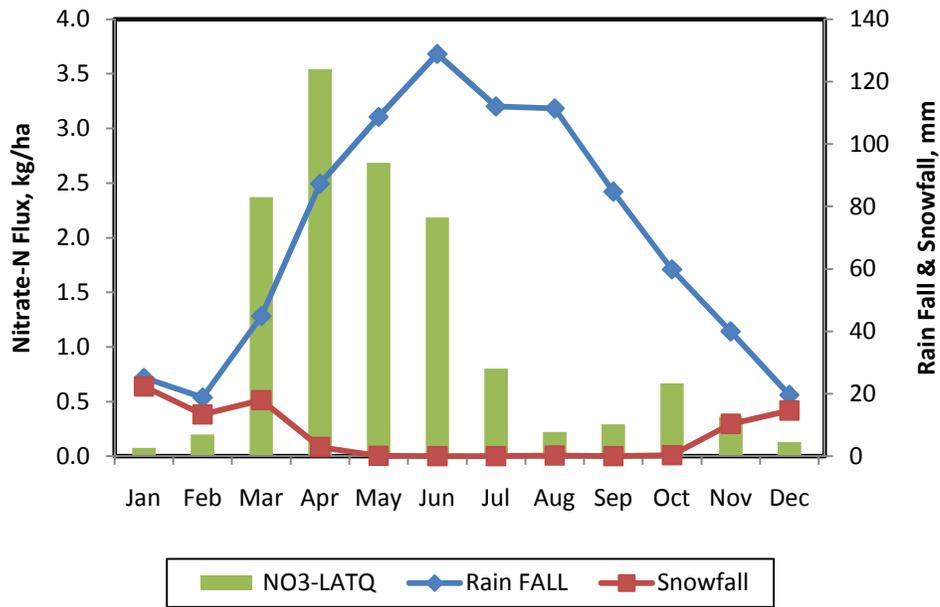


Figure 5-6: Relationship between Rainfall and Snowfall with Tile Loss of Nitrate-N

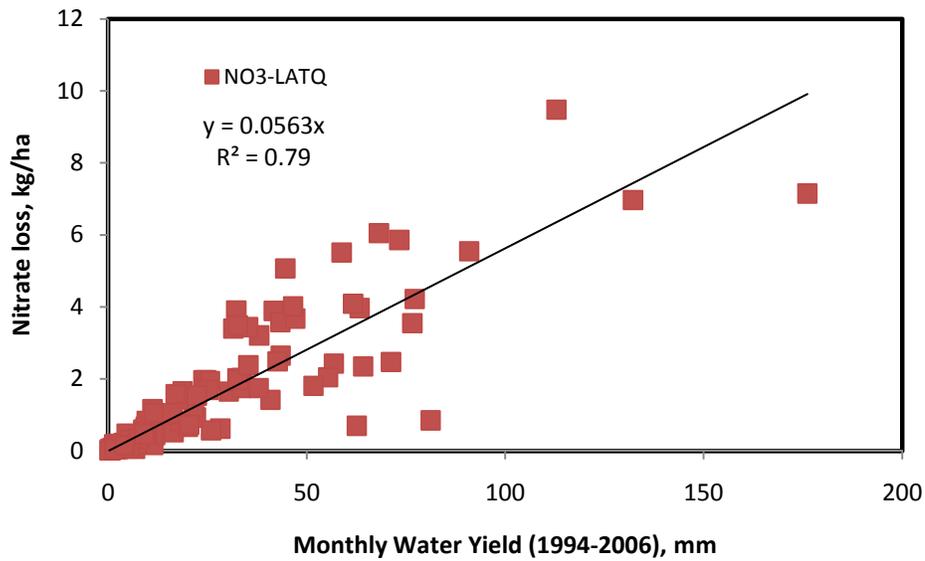


Figure 5-7: Water yield Vs Nitrate-N Losses

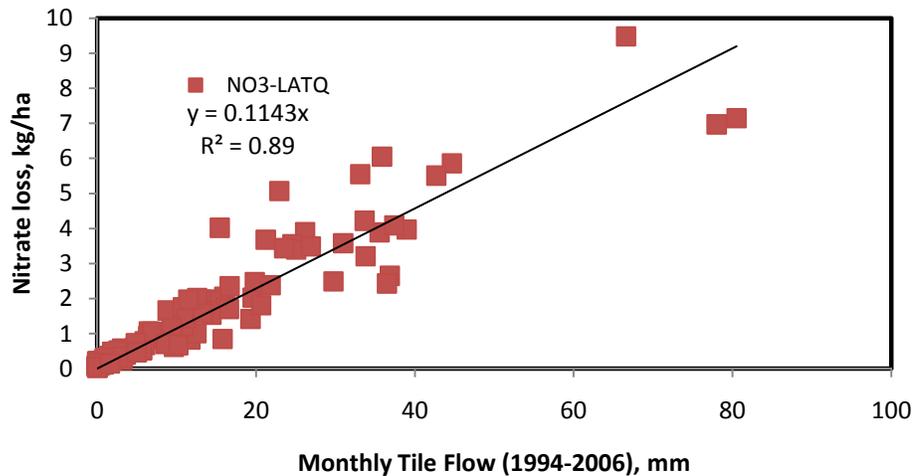


Figure 5-8: Tile flow Vs Nitrate-N losses

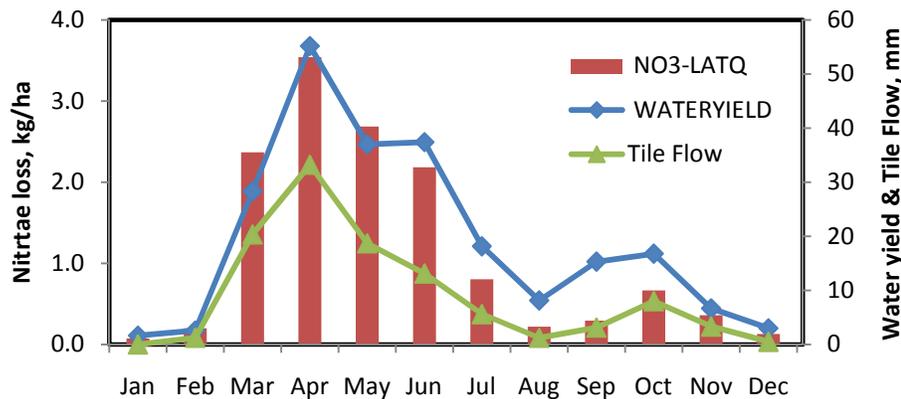


Figure 5-9: Relationships between water yield and tile flow with Nitrate-N losses

### 5.3.4. Nitrogen Budget

N losses through tile drains, groundwater discharge and interflow averaged 16.2 kg/ha, which is 8.1% of applied fertilizer and manure. The annual average crop N-uptake of corn and soybeans in the LRW was 55.5 kg/ha more than the applied N-fertilizer.

Mineralization of fresh and active organic matter adds 116.1 kg/ha N, and an additional 42.1 kg/ha N was supplied from fixation and deposition. N losses by volatilization and denitrification totaled 22.3 kg/ha/year (Table 5-3 & Table 5-4). Snow fall and rainfall conditions in the LRW induced saturation of soils and consequently denitrification. The annual rate of denitrification rate was 15.9 kg/ha. This is in close agreement to the findings of David et al. (1997, 2009). Overall, the calculated mass balance revealed a

net gain of 0.8 kg/ha N. Thus, with the current production system of the LRW there is no net depletion of soil nitrogen.

Table 5-3: Nitrogen inputs to the LRW

<b>INPUTS</b>	(Kg/Ha)	%
N-FERTILIZER APPLIED	139.4	46.9
MIN OF FRESH ORG N	33.8	11.4
MIN OF ACTIVE ORG N	82.3	27.7
NO3 IN RAINFALL	8.0	2.7
N FIXATION	34.1	11.5
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>297.5</b>	<b>100</b>

Table 5-4: Nitrogen outputs from the LRW

<b>OUTPUTS</b>	(Kg/Ha)	%
ACTIVE TO STABLE ORG N	61.4	20.7
N-UPTAKE	194.9	65.5
AMMONIA VOLATILIZATION	6.4	2.2
DENITRIFICATION	15.9	5.4
NO3 YIELD (Interflow)	2.1	0.7
NO3 YIELD (Tile Drains)	13.5	4.6
NO3 YIELD (Groundwater)	0.6	0.2
ORGN_OUT	1.8	0.6
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>296.7</b>	<b>100.0</b>

$$N_{\text{inputs}} - N_{\text{outputs}} = \text{Change in Soil N Storage } (\Delta N_{\text{Soil}})$$

$$297.5 - 296.7 = 0.8 \text{ kg/ha}$$

### 5.3.5. Spatial and Temporal Distribution of Nitrate-N Losses

The average annual total riverine nitrogen load from the LRW was 17.6 kg/ha (Table 5-6). Tile drainage accounts for 76% of the total loss. The organic and mineral nitrogen losses accounted for 9% and 91% of the total loss, respectively. Croplands contributed 99% of the predicted total nitrogen loading to surface waters in the LRW. About 30% of the watershed area contributes half of the losses.

The months of March to July are when 86% of the LRW nitrogen losses occur. The spatial distribution of nitrogen losses (Figure 5-10) indicates that only 30% of the LRW contributes about 50% of the nitrogen loss from 1994-2006. The Upper Le Sueur sub-watershed contributes 57% of the total nitrogen loss. This was disproportional to its areal coverage of 40% of the LRW. The Big Cobb (28% of LRW area) and the Maple major sub-watershed (31% of LRW) contributed 22% and 21% of the annual average nitrogen losses (Table 5-5).

Table 5-5: Nitrogen Losses from the Sub-watersheds of the LRW

Reach	Area, ha	kg			%
		Organic-N	Nitrate- N	Total N	
LRW	285676	41746	4879837	4921583	100
Upper Le Sueur	115286	30246	3575743	3605989	57
Big Cobb	79955	18855	1386439	1405294	22
Maple	88081	28475	1276237	1304712	21

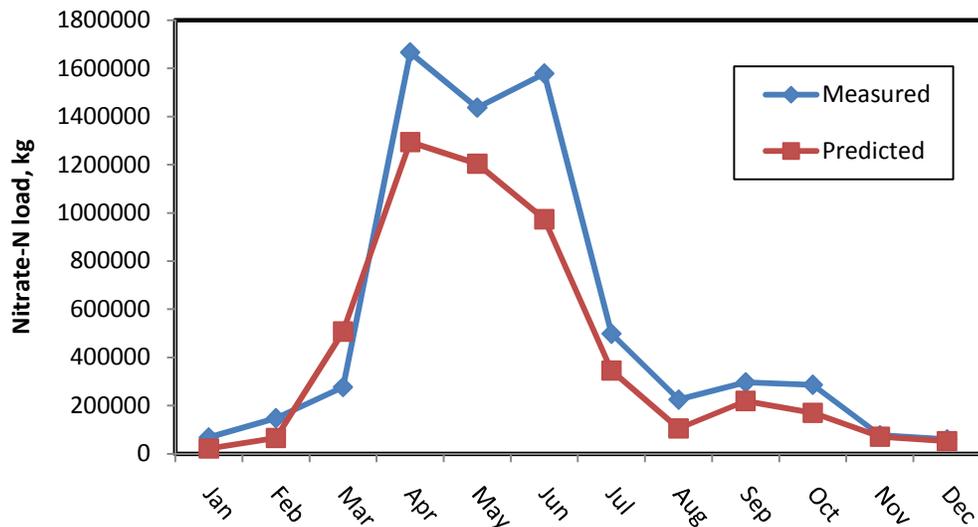


Figure 5-10: Average Monthly Nitrogen Loss Validation in the LRW (2000-2006)

Table 5-6: Annual Nitrogen Loss in the LRW (kg/ha)

Year	ORGN, kg/ha	N-SURQ, kg/ha	LAT-NO3, kg/h	GW-NO3, kg/ha	Total N, kg/ha
1994	0.95	2.21	10.06	0.51	13.72
1995	0.80	1.24	16.36	0.64	19.04
1996	1.02	1.18	7.95	0.31	10.45
1997	1.08	1.40	12.85	0.45	15.78
1998	1.10	1.45	10.75	0.36	13.66
1999	2.12	3.34	22.63	0.99	29.08
2000	3.52	2.01	13.07	0.83	19.42
2001	3.32	3.61	15.18	0.47	22.58
2002	0.92	0.99	10.99	0.47	13.37
2003	0.36	0.73	8.54	0.29	9.92
2004	2.35	1.64	13.77	1.01	18.77
2005	2.47	3.13	14.45	0.61	20.67
2006	1.62	4.19	16.49	0.47	22.78
Average	1.66	2.09	13.32	0.57	17.63

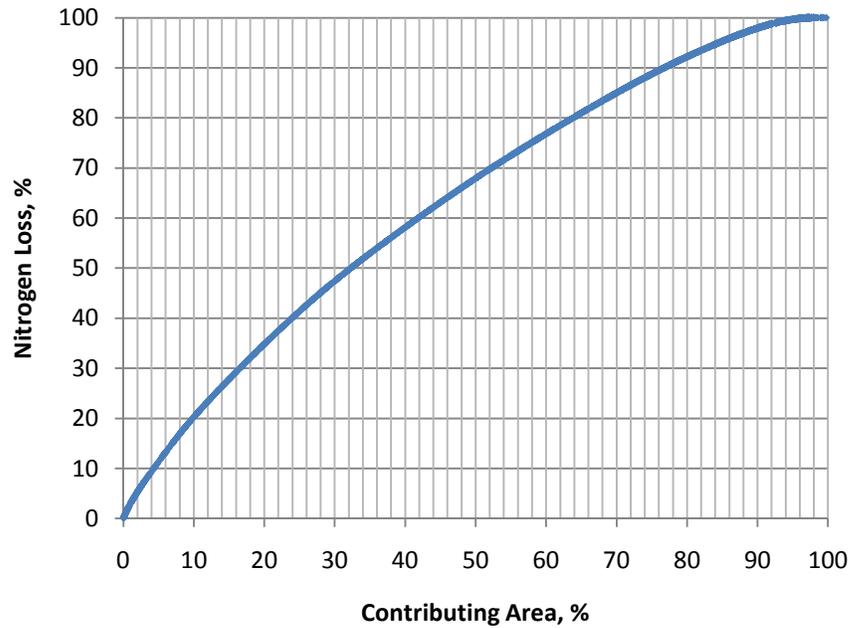


Figure 5-11: Contributing Area vs Nitrogen Loss

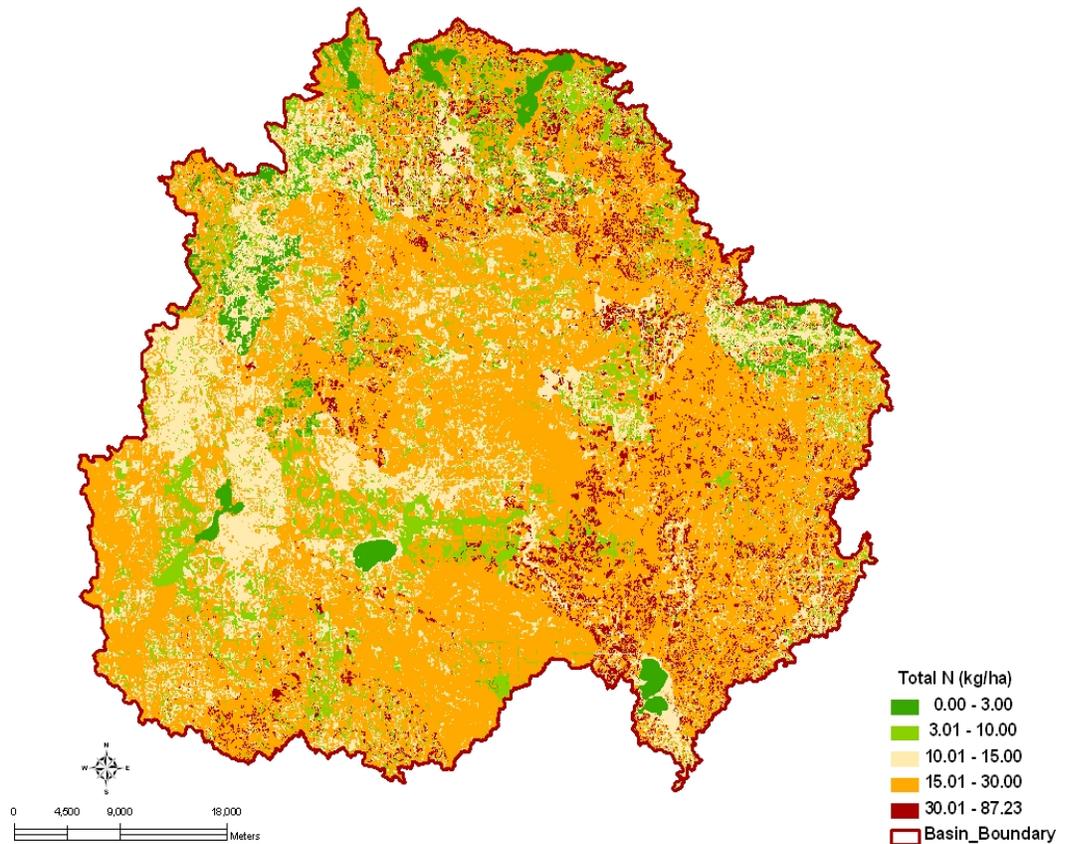


Figure 5-12: Nitrogen Contributing Areas in the LRW

### 5.3.6. Nitrate-N BMPs

#### A. Reduced rate fall/spring nitrogen application

The baseline application rate of nitrogen fertilizer from both animal manure and applied anhydrous ammonia was 167 kg/ha. Fall application of 134 kg/ha of nitrogen (a reduction of 20%) reduced total N losses by about 22%. In contrast to this, spring application of reduced rates of urea only reduced 7% of the nitrogen loss (Table 5-7). This result does not agree with the findings of Randall et al., (1993) for the same study area. According to them, planted corn recovered 13% more nitrogen when urea is applied in spring than anhydrous ammonia applied in fall (Randall and Schmitt, 1993).

### B. Conservation tillage

SWAT simulation of conservation tillage on 50% of corn land did not show any reductions in nitrogen loss. An increase in surface residue cover reduced soil erosion and increased infiltration. Consequently, organic N losses decreased and tile drainage losses increased.

Table 5-7: Relative effects of application of different BMPs in reducing N loss in the LRW

Scenario	kg/ha					% Reduction
	Organic-N	Surface-N	Tile-N	Groundwater-N	Total N	
Baseline	1.7	2.1	13.3	0.6	17.6	
Reduced rate fall nitrogen application (AA)	1.4	1.9	10.0	0.5	13.8	21.6
Reduced rate spring nitrogen application (Urea)	1.4	2.0	12.4	0.5	16.35	7.1
Conservation Tillage on 50% corn residue	1.5	2.2	13.4	0.6	17.6	0
No Tillage on 50% corn residue	1.4	2.1	13.3	0.6	17.3	1.7
VFS on CS over 2% slope	1.2	1.3	14.1	0.5	17.1	2.8
Rye as cover crop	1.2	2.3	10.4	0.5	14.3	18.8

### C. Vegetative filter strips (VFS)

Application of VFS on corn-soy land steeper than 2% slope showed an 8% reduction in total N loss. This was mainly due to a decrease in total organic nitrogen and surface runoff losses.

#### **D. No-tillage**

There is no substantial reduction in total nitrogen loss from the application of no-tillage on 50% corn fields. There was only a 2% reduction in the total loss.

#### **E. Cover Crops**

Planting rye after corn harvest covered the soil during the winter season and reduced the total nitrogen loss by 16%. Rye was planted after the October corn harvest and produced high above-ground biomass until the 3rd week of April. The high rye biomass production resulted in increased uptake of nitrogen from the soil, which otherwise would have been lost in tile drainage. Consequently, rye reduced the amount lost in tile drainage by 2.9 kg/ha/year.

## 5.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

The increase in application of commercial fertilizers and the expansion of sub-surface drainage technology have caused high nitrate flux in the upper Mississippi River in general, and the Minnesota River basin and the LRW in particular (Magner et al., 2004). The LRW in the Minnesota River basin is an agricultural watershed covering 285,000 ha, from which about 18 kg/ha of nitrate-N is discharged every year.

The LRW SWAT model nitrate-N simulation built upon good calibration and validation results of the SWAT hydrology and sediment simulation modeling. Monthly calibration and validation of nitrate-N in the Beauford sub-watershed gave NSE values of 0.74 and 0.77, respectively. The calibrated nitrate-N parameters were transferred to the LRW, where good agreement between predicted and observed nitrate-N values was obtained, with an NSE value of 0.74.

The nitrate-N losses were well correlated to the water yield and tile flow in the LRW with  $R^2$  values of 0.79 and 0.89, respectively. The compounded effects of snow melt and tile flow in the months of March to May have caused the climax nitrate-N losses of 1.5-3.5 kg/ha/month. The calculated nitrogen mass balance has shown a net gain of 0.8 kg/ha. Despite the big losses of nitrate-N from the LRW, there is no net depletion of the watershed soil nitrogen. Reduced rate nitrogen fertilizer applications and winter cover cropping are proven to be the best management practices that can reduce the losses.

Further research is needed to improve the LRW SWAT modeling of nitrate-N dynamics:

- A routine that accounts for variations in drain spacing and depth of tile drains
- Routing of flow and pollutants between HRUs
- Targeted placement of BMPs like filter strips, grassed water ways, riparian buffer zones, wetlands, grassland or other land use within a given sub-watershed
- A routines for concentrated animal feeding operations.

## **Chapter 6 : SWAT MODELING OF LRW PESTICIDE DYNAMICS**

## SYNOPSIS

Pesticides from diffuse and point sources can enter water resources and cause surface and ground water pollution. In this study the movement and fate of the pesticides acetochlor, metolachlor, and atrazine were studied using the SWAT model in the Le Sueur River watershed (LRW) of South Central Minnesota. Monitoring results have shown frequent detections of these herbicides in surface waters of the LRW. The objective of this study was to investigate management options for reducing pesticide contamination. The SWAT model was calibrated in the Beauford sub-watershed and applied to the entire LRW.

SWAT model setup and configuration was made for a baseline acetochlor application rate of 1.79 kg/ha applied to 35% of the fields planted to corn. Predicted monthly average losses of acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor were very accurate, with NSE values of 0.96, 0.91 and 0.71, respectively. Losses of all three pesticides were for the most part in solution form. The estimated average annual losses of acetochlor, atrazine, and metolachlor from the LRW were 0.47%, 0.02% and 0.0034% of the total annual application.

Reducing the acetochlor application rate to 1.47 kg/ha and the application area to 20% of the corn fields reduced losses by 17% and 56%, respectively, from baseline conditions. In contrast, increasing the application rate to 2.45 kg/ha and the application area to 50% increased losses by 37% and 117% of the baseline scenario, respectively. The combination of reduced application rate (1.47 kg/ha) and incorporation of acetochlor can reduce losses by over 95%. Vegetated filter strips reduced acetochlor losses by over 60%.

## 6.1. Introduction

Roughly 500,000 metric tons of pesticide active ingredients are used in the United States annually. Herbicides are widely used for the control of grassy and broad leaf weeds, accounting for 43% of the total pesticides, of which more than 77% is applied for agricultural production purposes (Aspelin, 2003; Rebich et al., 2004). The Upper Mississippi River Basin receives a large portion of the applied herbicides (Rebich et al., 2004). Cropland in the Midwest receives about two thirds of the herbicides used for agriculture in the United States (Barbash and Resek, 1996).

Despite all the advantages of pesticides, high pesticide usage can have unintended effects on the environment and human health through its effects on surface and ground water quality (Aspelin, 2003). Banning pesticide usage may cause the losses of food and fiber crops, expansion of infectious diseases and damage of native habitats by invasive species (Rice et al., 2007). Thus, proper pesticide use and management to balance its economic benefit with the possible environmental impacts is the challenge not yet completely resolved.

According to the National Water-Quality Assessment (NAWQA) of streams draining agricultural watersheds from 1992-2001, pesticides or pesticide degradates were detected 90 percent of the time. Pesticide concentrations exceeded human-health risk limits more than once in about 10 percent of agricultural streams. Most of those streams are in the corn-soybean producing areas, including Minnesota (Gilliom et al., 2006).

High herbicide loadings to the Gulf of Mexico were reported by Clark et al. (1999) in the spring following post application of herbicides. Rebich et al., (2002) analyzed water samples taken from March 1999 to May 2001 from the Mississippi River Basin, and atrazine was the most frequently detected (present in 97% of the samples). The chloroacetanilide herbicides metolachlor and acetochlor were detected in 60% and 31% of the samples, respectively. The extent of tile drainage throughout the Mississippi River Basin appeared to be related to the occurrence and distribution of chloroacetanilide degradates in water samples.

Studies by Battaglin and Goolsby (1999) showed large amounts of herbicide losses to streams and major rivers of the Midwest during periods of late spring and early summer rainfall (Battaglin and Goolsby, 1999). Several studies in the Midwestern US showed herbicides in streams, reservoirs, ground water, and precipitation (Gilliom et al., 2006; Gilliom, 1984; Kalkhoff et al., 2003; Kolpin et al., 1995; Larson et al., 1997; Scribner et al., 1998; Thurman et al., 1992).

### **6.1.1. Problem Statement**

Three herbicides that are typically applied to corn and soybean (acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor) were frequently detected in the Minnesota River Basin (Minnesota River Basin Data Center MRBDC., 2004). Detections were observed from 2000-2002 at the Le Sueur River at Highway 66, the Blue Earth River below the Rapidan Dam, and the Minnesota River at Judson.

Acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor are the three most commonly used herbicides in Minnesota (Minnesota Department of Agriculture (MDA), 2009; USDA, 1998). The Le Sueur River is impaired for acetochlor (based on the proposed chronic standard of 1.7 µg/L) from the Maple River to Blue Earth River and the Beauford Ditch (MPCA, 2007). The Minnesota Department of Agriculture is actively studying the use and management of acetochlor in the LRW (Minnesota Department of Agriculture (MDA), 2009).

Atrazine is a family of the triazine pesticides. It is a weak base that inhibits protein synthesis of broad leaf weeds. It is widely used for corn production as a pre-plant, pre-emerge or post emergence treatment. The relatively low affinity for soil sorption makes atrazine very mobile. It has a large potential to leach down the soil profile and to move in solution with surface runoff and subsurface drainage. It is one of the most frequently detected herbicides in surface water and groundwater of the Midwest (Goolsby et al., 1991; Clay and Koskinen, 1990; Goss, 1992).

Acetochlor and metolachlor are non ionic herbicides of the acetamide family. They are used as pre-emergent herbicide to control grasses and some broadleaf weeds in corn. Metolachlor is also used to control weeds in soybeans. The two herbicides have high water solubility and are moderately adsorbed to soils. Their sorption is mainly related to clay and organic matter content of soils. These herbicides are primarily degraded by microorganisms (Kolpin et al., 1996; Weber and Peter, 1982).

Analysis of herbicide concentrations in soil and water samples is expensive (Wauchope, 1992). Simulation models can be used to characterize the temporal and spatial magnitude of pesticide concentrations and fluxes at the watershed scale, reducing the need for extensive spatial and temporal water sampling and analysis. Accurate simulation of pesticide fate and transport requires good representation of the transport mechanisms that occur in the field and calibration and validation of model predictions against measured pesticide concentration data.

### **6.1.2. Objectives**

The SWAT pesticide model was used to quantify pesticide fate and transport processes in the LRW as controlled by surface and subsurface settings, hydrologic conditions, and agricultural practices. The specific objectives of the study are to:

- Quantify the spatial and temporal distributions of pesticide losses
- Evaluate potential adverse impacts on water resources
- Identify feasible management practices using modeling techniques.

### **6.1.3. Models of Pesticide Dynamics**

Several watershed scale pesticide fate and transport models were developed over the last three decades. The complexity of these models ranges from screening to research models. Simple screening models usually have minimal input data, are relatively easy to use, and produce fast results. The primary function of these models is the preliminary assessment of specific geographic environments, or pesticide behavior and fate processes for future study. Complex research models are meant to simulate the actual

physical, chemical, or biological processes accurately using a large amount of input data and require large amounts of computer time. Their output describes pesticide concentrations as a function of time and space (Larson et al., 1997).

Relatively complex pesticide models are listed in Table 6-1. Among the recently developed more complex pesticide simulation models are the event based models of AGNPS (Merritt et al., 2003; Young, 1987) and DWSM (Borah et al., 2002), continuous simulation models of AnnAGNPS (Bingner and Theurer, 2001), HSPF (Bicknell et al., 1995), SWAT (Neitsch, et al., 2002), and MIKE SHE (Refsgaard et al., 1995) which works using either a single-event or long-term continuous simulations, mainly for small watersheds (Borah and Bera, 2003). The major difference among these models include, land phase and in-stream pesticide transport and transformations processes, spatial and temporal variability in their input parameters.

#### **6.1.4. Pesticide Simulation Processes in SWAT Model**

SWAT pesticide simulation starts by defining the type, amount and dates of application of pesticides to an HRU with further details describing the initial pesticide residue in the soil. The simulation modeling routines were made based on the interactions among the pesticide properties, soils, climate, and management effects on pesticide losses. However, the model does not simulate the stress on the growth of a plant due to the presence of weeds.

SWAT simulates pesticide movement into the stream network via surface runoff in solution and adsorbed to sediment, and into the soil profile by leaching. The movement of the pesticide is controlled by its solubility, degradation half-life, and soil organic carbon adsorption coefficient. The equations in SWAT used to model pesticide movement and fate are adapted from GLEAMS (Leonard et al., 1987).

SWAT is largely used for prediction of pesticide fluxes to rivers (Holvoet et al., 2005; Holvoet et al., 2007; Kannan et al., 2007; Kannan et al., 2006). Borah and Bera (2003) have reviewed eleven watershed scale hydrologic and nonpoint -source pollution

models. They concluded that SWAT is a promising model for continuous simulations in predominantly agricultural watersheds and HSPF for mixed agricultural and urban land use watersheds (Borah and Bera, 2003). Im et al. (2003) compared SWAT and HSPF, and concluded that SWAT is a robust model that often performs better than HSPF. SWAT is a user friendly model with better documentation than HSPF.

Table 6-1: Pesticide models

Acronym	Name	References	Original Purpose
EPIC	Erosion-Productivity Impact calculator	(Mitchell et al., 1996)	Management model for farms
GLEAMS	Groundwater loading effects of Agricultural Management Practices	(Knisel, 1993; Knisel and Davis, 2000; Leonard et al., 1987)	Management model for agricultural advisors
OPUS	OPUS (Fate of NPS in field)	(Ma et al., 1999)	Research management
PRZM	Pesticide Root Zone Model	(Carsel et al., 1998)(Singh et al., 1996)	Pesticide Registration
RZWQM	Root Zone Water Quality Model	(Kumar et al., 1998; Singh et al., 1996)	Research-Management
LEACHM	Leaching Estimation and Chemistry Model	(Dust et al., 2000; Wagenet and Hutson, 1989)	Research (mechnistic model for vertical transport)

Source: (Siimes and Kaemaeri, 2003)

## 6.2. Materials and Methods

### 6.2.1. Study Area

This study was conducted in the LRW, a region of extensive corn-soybean production in South Central Minnesota. Acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor are the three most commonly used herbicides for corn and soybean production in the watershed. The draft 2008 303(d) impaired waters list for acetochlor includes the Le Sueur River from the Maple River to the Blue Earth River and the Beauford Ditch (MPCA, 2007).

### 6.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis

Application area, rate and date for the three selected pesticides (acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor) as surveyed by MDA were organized in the SWAT operation management database. Application of herbicides was made to randomly selected fields in the LRW in conformity with the MDA survey areas receiving herbicide application. The year 2005 was used for calibration of pesticide input parameters. The Beauford sub-watershed was selected as a representative area for calibration. The calibrated model parameters were transferred to the entire LRW. No model validation was possible, given the short duration of water quality monitoring data in the LRW.

SWAT model pesticide potential pathways and processes were adapted from the GLEAMS model (Leonard, 1987). These processes govern the fate and transport of pesticides on plant foliage and in the soil. Pesticide wash-off from the plant foliage occurs when the rainfall on a given day exceeds 2.54 mm, using the equation:

$$P_{f,wsh} = fr_{wsh} * P_f \quad (6.1)$$

where  $P_{f,wsh}$  (kg/ha) is the amount of pesticide that is washed-off from the plant foliage,  $fr_{wsh}$  is the fraction of total pesticide that is washed off, and  $P_f$  (kg/ha) is the total amount of pesticide that is present on the plant foliage.

The three simulated pesticides are organic compounds that contain carbon. Therefore, they can be degraded by microorganisms following first order kinetics:

$$P_t = P_{s,o} * \exp[-K_{ps} * t] \quad (6.2)$$

$$P_f = P_{f,o} * \exp[-K_{pf} * t] \quad (6.3)$$

where  $P_t$  and  $P_f$  are pesticide concentration at time  $t$  in the soil and foliar, (kg/ha),  $P_{s,o}$  and  $P_{f,o}$  are the initial concentration of pesticide in soil layer and foliar (mg/L), and  $K_{ps}$  and  $K_{pf}$  are the rate constant for pesticide degradation in soil and foliar (1/time) and  $t$  is time elapsed since initial pesticide amount was determined. days.

The relation of rate constant to half life is given by:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{K_p} \quad (6.4)$$

Where  $t_{1/2}$  is the half life of the pesticide.

SWAT model pesticide transport algorithms were taken from EPIC model (Williams et al., 1984). Surface runoff is the major process of pesticide movement from the land surface to the stream network. This occurs in solution or adsorbed forms as partitioned by the adsorption coefficient of pesticides to soils, as normalized for soil organic carbon content.

$$K_p = \frac{C_{solid}}{C_{solu}} = Koc \frac{OrgC}{100} \quad (6.5)$$

where  $K_p$  is the adsorption coefficient (mg/kg)/(mg/L),  $C_{solid}$  is the concentration of pesticide in solid phase (mg/kg), and  $C_{solu}$  is the concentration in the solution phase (mg/L),  $Koc$  is the soil adsorption coefficient normalized for soil organic carbon content (mg/kg)/(mg/L), and  $OrgC$  is the organic carbon content of the soil.

### **Soluble Phase Pesticide Transport**

The amount of pesticide removed in surface runoff is given by:

$$P_{Surf} = \beta_p * Conc_{p.flow} * Q_{surf} \quad (6.6)$$

Where  $pst_{surf}$  is the amount of pesticide removed in surface runoff (kg/ha),  $\beta_p$  is the pesticide percolation coefficient,  $Conc_{p.flow}$  is the pesticide concentration in mobile water for the top 10 mm of soil (kg/mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and  $Q_{surf}$  is the surface runoff generated on a given day (mm H<sub>2</sub>O).

### **Adsorbed Pesticide Transport**

The sediment loading from an HRU affects the loading of adsorbed pesticides. This is calculated using the equation:

$$P_{\text{Sed}} = 0.001 * C_{\text{solid}} * \frac{\text{sed}}{\text{HRU}_{\text{area}}} * \varepsilon_{\text{p.sed}} \quad (6.7)$$

where  $P_{\text{sed}}$  is the amount of sorbed pesticide transported to the main channel in surface runoff (kg/ha),  $C_{\text{solid}}$  is the concentration of pesticide on sediment in the top 10 mm (g pest/metric ton soil),  $\text{sed}$  is the sediment yield on a given day (metric tons),  $\text{HRU}_{\text{area}}$  is the HRU area (ha), and  $\varepsilon_{\text{p.sed}}$  is the pesticide enrichment ratio.

### **Pesticide Percolation**

The amount of pesticide percolated to lower soil layers is given by:

$$P_{\text{perc}} = \text{Conc}_{\text{p.flow}} * w_{\text{perc}} \quad (6.8)$$

Where  $p_{\text{perc}}$  is the pesticide moved to the underlying layer by percolation (kg/ha),  $\text{conc}_{\text{p.flow}}$  is the concentration of pesticide in the mobile water for the layer (kg/mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and  $w_{\text{perc}}$  is the amount of water percolating to the underlying soil layer on a given day (mm H<sub>2</sub>O).

### **Pesticide Lateral Flow**

$$P_{\text{lat.surf}} = \beta_{\text{p}} \text{Conc}_{\text{p.flow}} * Q_{\text{lat.surf}} \quad (6.9)$$

$$P_{\text{lat}} = \text{Conc}_{\text{p.flow}} * Q_{\text{lat}} \quad (6.10)$$

where  $P_{\text{lat}}$  is the pesticide removed in lateral flow from a layer (kg/ha),  $\beta_{\text{p}}$  is the pesticide percolation coefficient,  $\text{conc}_{\text{p.flow}}$  is the concentration of pesticide in the mobile water for the layer (kg/mm H<sub>2</sub>O), and  $Q_{\text{lat}}$  is the water discharged from the layer by lateral flow (mm H<sub>2</sub>O).

### 6.3. Results and Discussion

The pesticide calibration and validation process was conducted after calibrating and validating the model for hydrology and sediment yield. Model simulation was initiated by setting the physico-chemical properties of the three pesticides (Table 6-2) and the baseline application management as defined in the management input file (Table 6-3).

Table 6-2: Physico-Chemical Properties of Selected Pesticides

PESTICIDE	Atrazine	Metolachlor	Acetochlor
SOIL-KOC ( mg/kg)/(mg/L)	100	190	150
HALF LIFE FOLIAR (days)	5	5	5
HALF-LIFE SOIL (days)	60	100	12
WATER-SOLUBLITY (mg/L)	33	530	223

Table 6-3: Baseline Scheduled Herbicide Applications

Year	Crop type	Management operation	Date
Year 1	Corn	- Metolachlor application (2.48 kg/ha)	May 3
		- Acetochlor application (1.79 kg/ha)	Apr 29
		- Atrazine application (0.66 kg/ha)	Apr 29
Year 2	Soybean	- Metolachlor (1.0 kg/ha)	May 14

Note

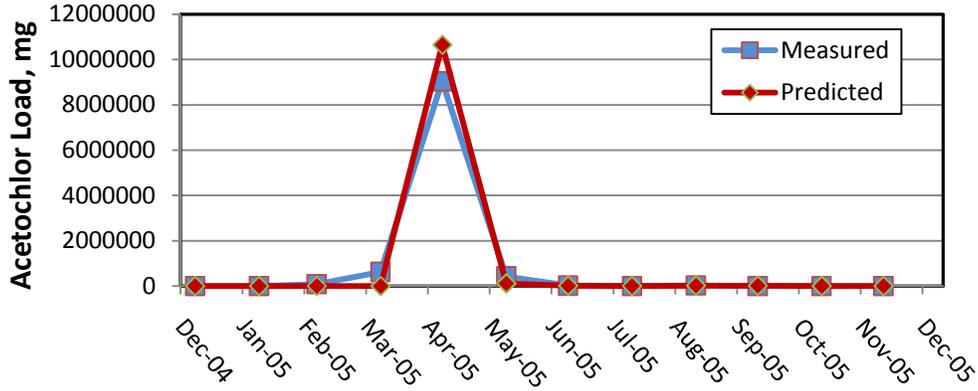
- Acetochlor was applied to 35% of the corn acreage
- Atrazine was applied to 15% of the corn acreage
- Metolachlor was applied to 4% of corn and 1% of soybean acreage

#### 6.3.1. Calibration and Validation

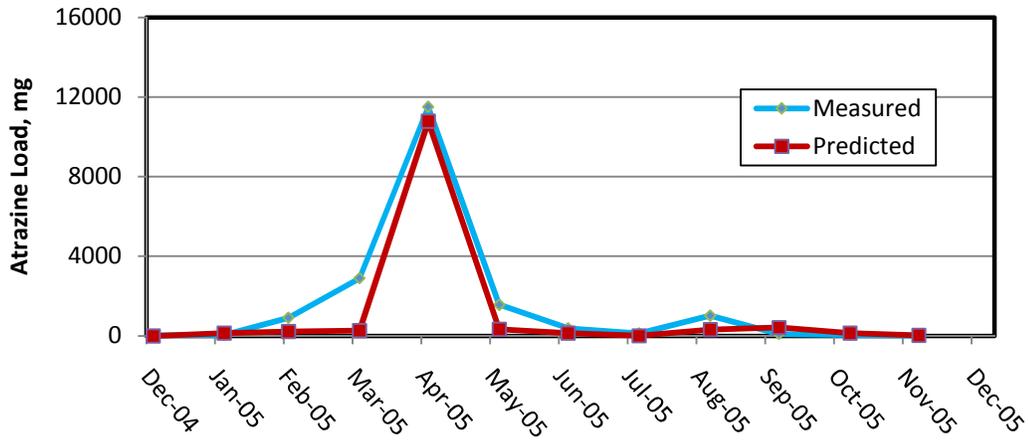
The predicted and observed monthly average losses of acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor (Figure 6-1) have NSE values of 0.96, 0.91 and 0.71, respectively. This indicates the SWAT model can predict the monthly losses of these pesticides with great accuracy. The loss of all three pesticides is for the most part in solution form.

Comparing the three pesticides, acetochlor has the largest (93%) loss in solution form, and metolachlor has the largest sorbed loss of 18% (Table 6-4). Of the total amount applied in 2005, about 4.1% of the applied acetochlor and 0.01% of atrazine and metolachlor reached the mouth of the Beauford sub-watershed.

A) Acetochlor



B) Atrazine



C) Metolachlor

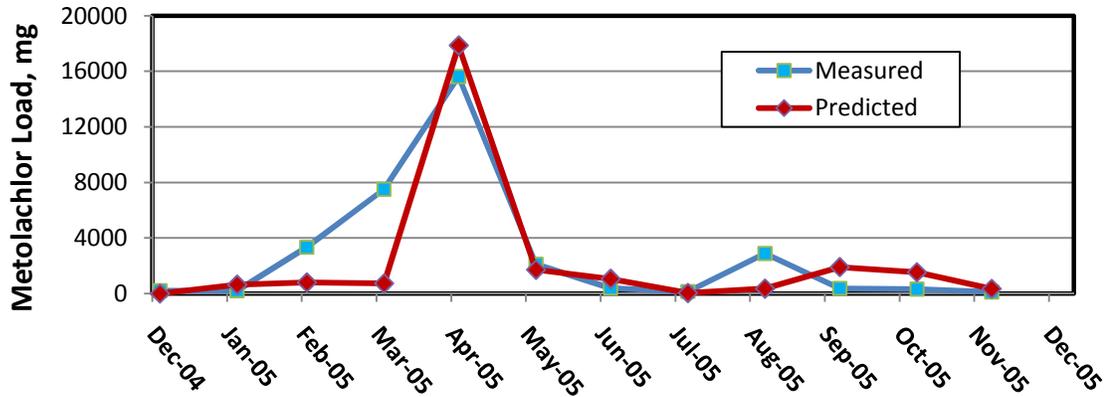


Figure 6-1: Pesticide Calibration Results in the Beauford Sub-Watershed

Table 6-4: Predicted pesticide losses in solution and adsorbed forms

Pesticide	Solution, %	Sorbed, %
Acetochlor	93	7
Atrazine	86	14
Metolachlor	82	18

### 6.3.2. LRW Estimated Pesticide Losses

#### 6.3.2.1. Acetochlor

About 35% of LRW corn fields received acetochlor applications. The average application rate was 1.79 kg/ha active ingredient. The estimated average annual loss of acetochlor from the LRW was 0.47% of the total applied amount. Maximum losses occurred in the years 2000, 2005 and 2006, with percent losses of 1.56%, 1.59% and 1.75%, respectively (Figure 6-2). Acetochlor has a solubility of 223 mg/L and a short half life of 12 days, so it is largely lost in solution form. Ninety four percent of acetochlor loss in the LRW was in solution form. The three months from April to June are critical periods in which 99% of the acetochlor loss occurs (Figure 6-2 & Figure 6-3).

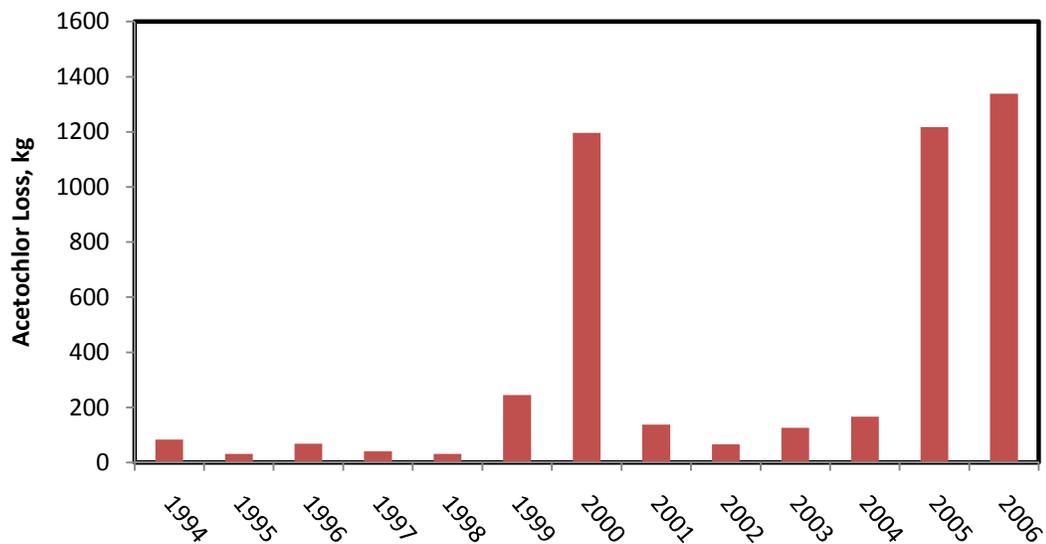


Figure 6-2: Annual loss of Acetochlor in the LRW

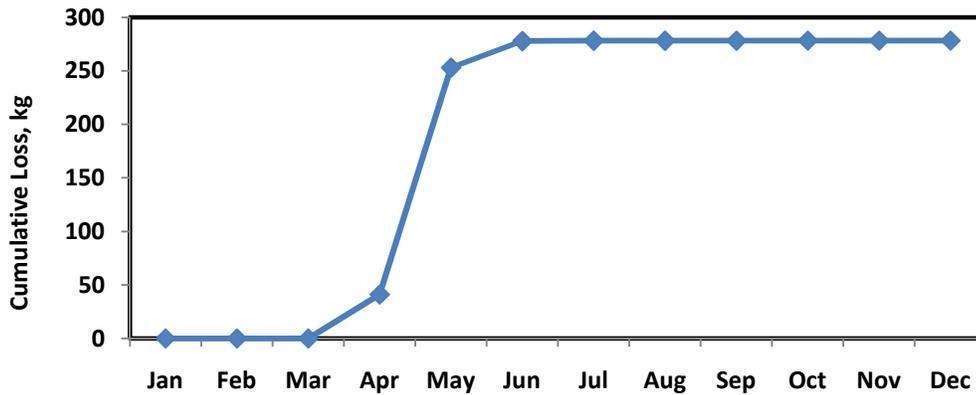


Figure 6-3: Average monthly cumulative losses of acetochlor in the LRW

### 6.3.2.2. Atrazine

Atrazine was applied to 15% of the corn fields in the LRW. The average application rate was 0.66 kg/ha of active ingredient. SWAT simulation results showed that 85% of the atrazine loss in the LRW occurs in the four months from April to July (Figure 6-4). About 82% of this loss occurs in solution form, and the remaining 18% is adsorbed to soil particles. Considering the high water solubility and low sorption coefficient of atrazine this result looks reasonable. Studies made by Wauchope (1978), Baker et al. (1978), Baker and Johnson (1979), and Arora et al. (1996) estimated 75 to 100% loss in solution and about 25% or less to be removed through sediment losses.

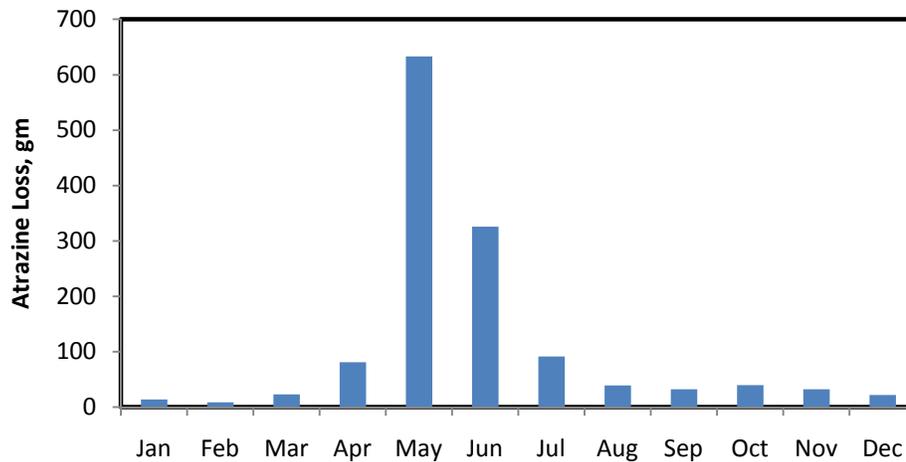


Figure 6-4: Average Monthly Loss of Atrazine in the LRW

The variability in timing of precipitation after application of atrazine is one of the most important factors that affects the loss in different years. The LRW has an average annual atrazine loss of about 3.2 kg or 0.02% of the total applied over the years 1994-2006. The maximum loss was 4.8% in the years 2000 and 2005 (Figure 6-5).

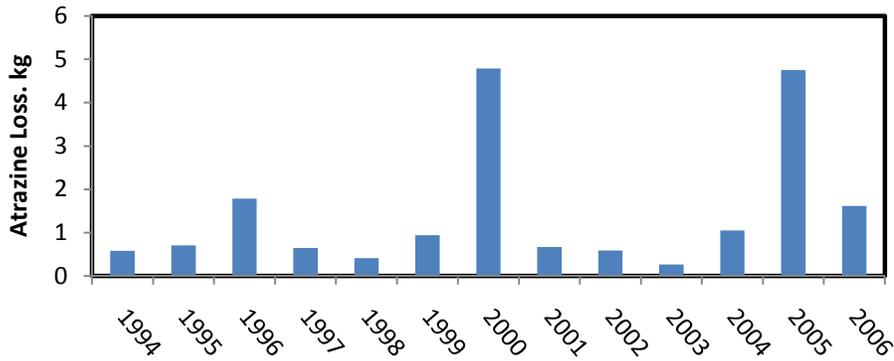


Figure 6-5: Annual Loss of Atrazine in the LRW

### 6.3.2.3. Metolachlor

SWAT simulation of metolachlor was made assuming that 4% of the corn fields and 1% of soybean fields in the LRW received this pesticide. The average application rate was 2.48 kg/ha for corn and 1 kg/ha for soybean. The simulated average annual loss of metolachlor was 5.54 kg or 0.034% of the amount applied. The maximum loss occurred in the year 2000, and was about 33 kg of the amount applied (Figure 6-6). The months of April to July are critical periods in which 91% of the loss occurs (Figure 6-7).

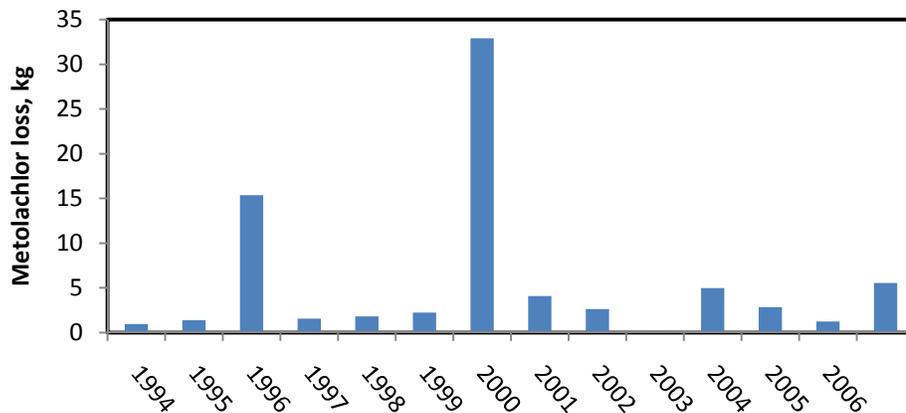


Figure 6-6: Annual Loss of Metolachlor in the LRW

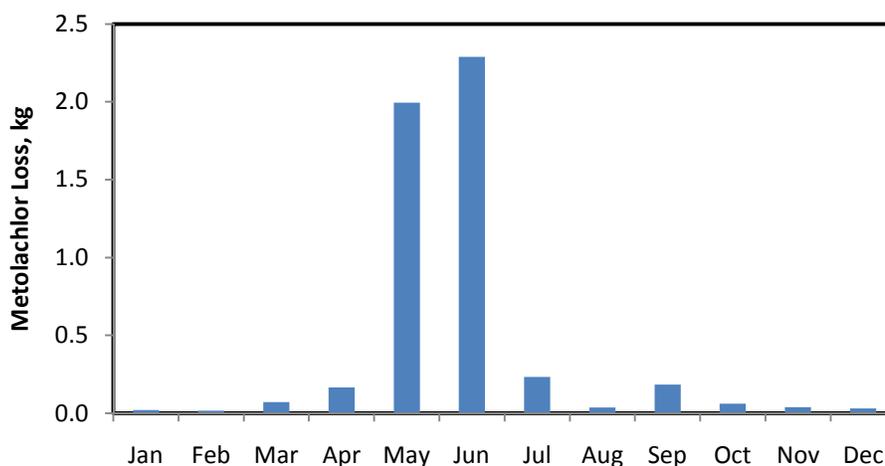


Figure 6-7: Average Monthly Loss of Metolachlor in the LRW

### 6.3.3. Acetochlor Best Management Practices (BMPs)

Evaluation of five alternative BMP scenarios for acetochlor were made in the Beauford sub-watershed, including 1) rate of application, 2) watershed area of application, 3) timing of application, 4) incorporation of acetochlor and 5) effects of buffer strips. The first alternative scenario involved rate of acetochlor application. Rate of acetochlor was either the low or high label rate of 1.47 or 2.45 kg/ha in comparison with the baseline rate of 1.79 kg/ha. The second scenario involved area receiving acetochlor applications. Watershed area receiving acetochlor applications was studied in two ways. The first was to apply acetochlor at a rate of 1.47 kg/ha on all Critical Contributing Areas (CCAs) and 1.79 kg/ha on all non-CCAs or to apply a rate of 1.47 kg/ha on all CCAs and 2.45 kg/ha on all non-CCAs. The second was to apply 1.79 kg/ha on 20% of the corn fields or 1.79 kg/ha on 50% of all corn fields. The third scenario involved date of application. Application date was varied from April 29 to May 3. The fourth scenario involved incorporation of acetochlor. The fifth scenario involved field buffer strips. Buffer strips were investigated with different rates of acetochlor on all land receiving acetochlor, or only on CCAs.

#### A. Acetochlor BMP Scenarios in the Beauford Sub-Watershed

Application rate had a significant effect on acetochlor losses (Figure 6-8a). In comparison with the baseline simulation, applying 1.47 kg/ha reduced acetochlor losses

by 17%. Applying 2.45 kg/ha increased acetochlor losses by 37%. Concentrations of acetochlor at the watershed scale were also affected by rate of application (Figure 6-8-8). Maximum concentrations were reached in the month of May. With an application rate of 1.47 kg/ha, the maximum concentration of acetochlor was 4.39 ug/L, with a rate of 2.45 kg/ha the maximum concentration was 7.23 ug/L.

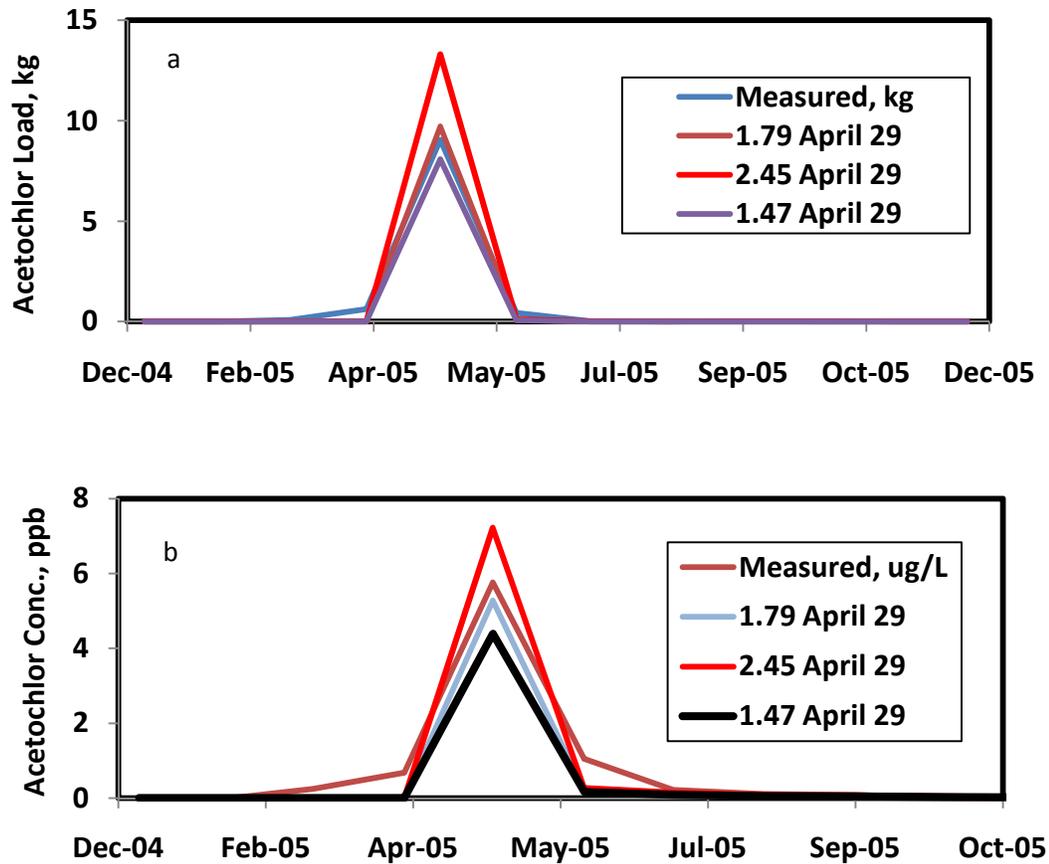


Figure 6-8: Effect of Changing Application Rate of Acetochlor in the Beauford Watershed.

Application of acetochlor at low label rates on CCAs reduced acetochlor losses considerably (Figure 6-9). Applying 1.47 kg/ha to CCAs and 1.79 kg/ha to non-CCAs resulted in an 11% reduction of acetochlor losses relative to the baseline scenario. Applying 1.47 kg/ha to CCAs and 2.45 kg/ha to non-CCAs (NCCA) resulted in a 3% reduction of acetochlor losses relative to the baseline scenario. Application of acetochlor at a rate of 1.79 kg/ha to 20% of the land planted to corn reduced acetochlor

losses by 56% relative to the default application on 35% of the corn fields. Increasing the area receiving acetochlor to 50% of the corn increased acetochlor losses by 117% relative to the baseline scenario.

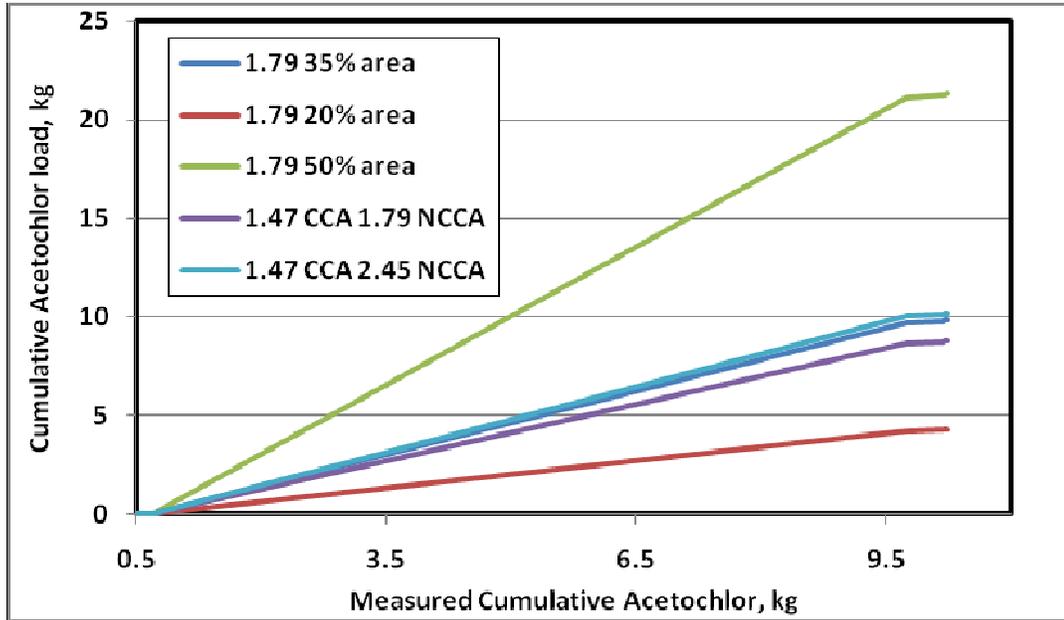


Figure 6-9: Effect of Watershed Application Area on Acetochlor Losses.

Application date had a considerable effect on acetochlor losses, relative to the baseline application date of April 29 (Figure 6-10). Delaying acetochlor applications until May 3 increased the losses by 31% with an application rate of 1.79 kg/ha and increased losses by 8% with an application rate of 1.47 kg/ha. This increase is due to the occurrence of storms shortly after May 3. Acetochlor should not be applied shortly before rainstorms to avoid large losses.

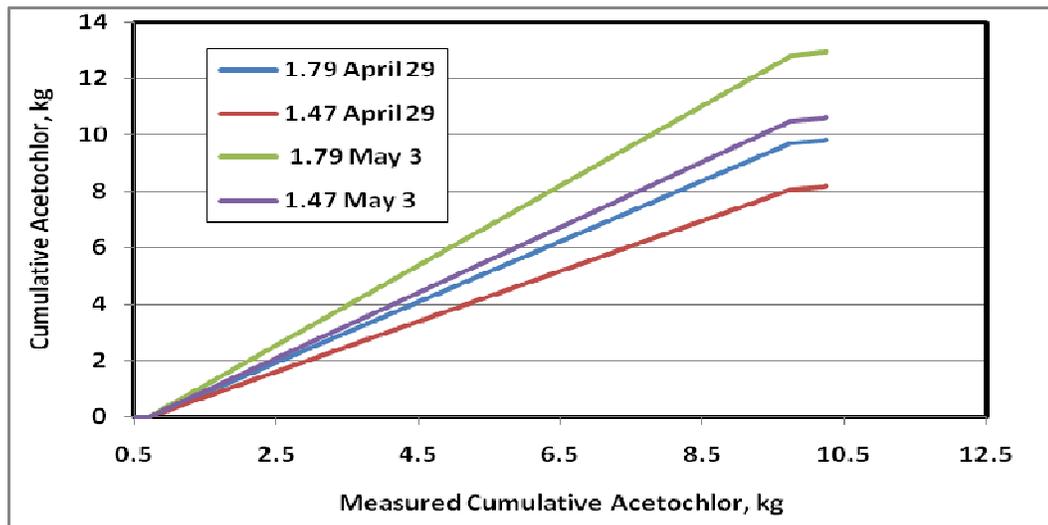


Figure 6-10: Acetochlor Losses in Response to Application Date and Rate.

Incorporation of acetochlor produced considerable reductions in acetochlor losses relative to the baseline scenario with no incorporation (Figure 6-11). At the lowest rate of acetochlor application (1.47 kg/ha), incorporation reduced acetochlor losses by 95% relative to the baseline scenario with an application rate of 1.79 kg/ha.

Field buffer strips had a considerable effect on acetochlor losses (Figure 6-12). Width of the buffer was somewhat important. With an 11m (33 ft) wide buffer applied throughout the watershed, acetochlor losses were reduced by 68% relative to the situation without buffers. With a 22 m (66 ft) wide buffer everywhere, losses were reduced by 89%. Buffers were more effective at lower rates of acetochlor application. Installing buffer strips only in CCAs reduced acetochlor losses by roughly 50%, relative to the baseline scenario.

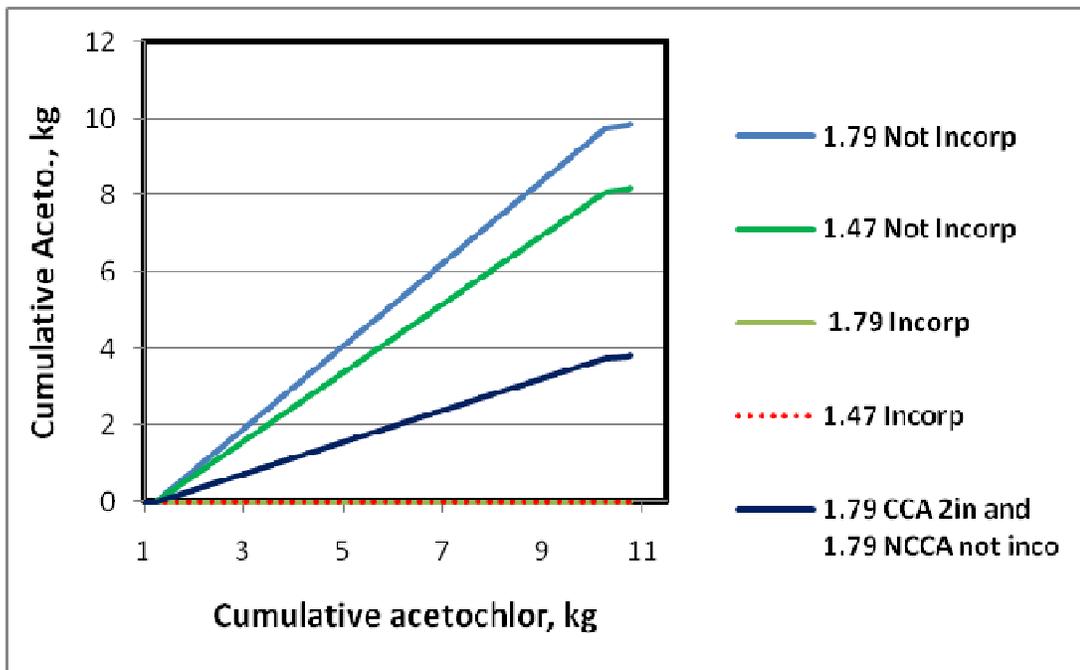


Figure 6-11: Effect of Acetochlor Incorporation on Acetochlor Losses.

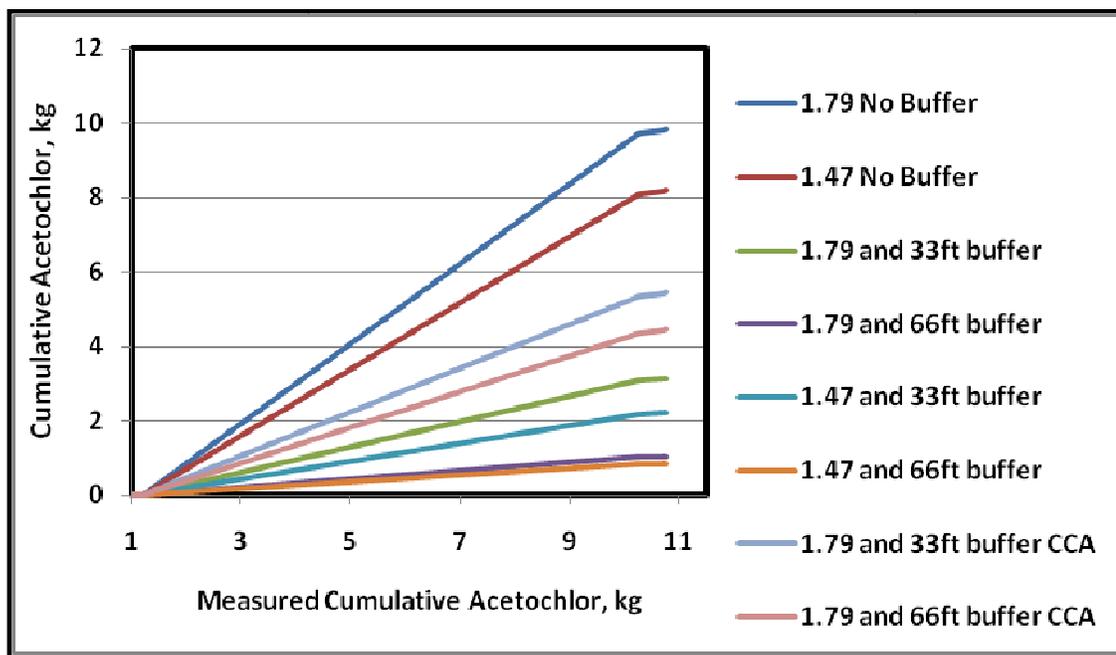


Figure 6-12: Effect of Buffer Strips on Acetochlor Losses.

### B. Acetochlor BMP Scenarios for the LRW

Based on model simulation results in the Beauford sub-watershed, six acetochlor best management practices were selected and applied to the LRW. The BMPs were:

1. Reduced rate of application, 1.47 kg/ha
2. Reducing application area from 35% of the watershed to 20%
3. Change in application time, post emergence on May 3rd
4. Incorporation of acetochlor
5. 11 m (33ft) wide buffer strips on all corn and soybean fields
6. 11 m (33ft) wide buffer strips on CCAs.

Incorporation of acetochlor reduced acetochlor losses in the LRW by over 95% (Fig. 6-13). This practice may not be feasible for adoption by farmers, as it requires significant changes in tillage and manure management. Reducing application rate to 1.47 kg/ha and application area to 20% of the corn fields, and establishing buffer strips reduces the loss by 18%, 62% and 73%, respectively. Buffer strip establishment targeted to CCAs reduced the loss by 14%. A change in application time to post emergence on May 3 reduces losses by only 9% (Figure 6-12).

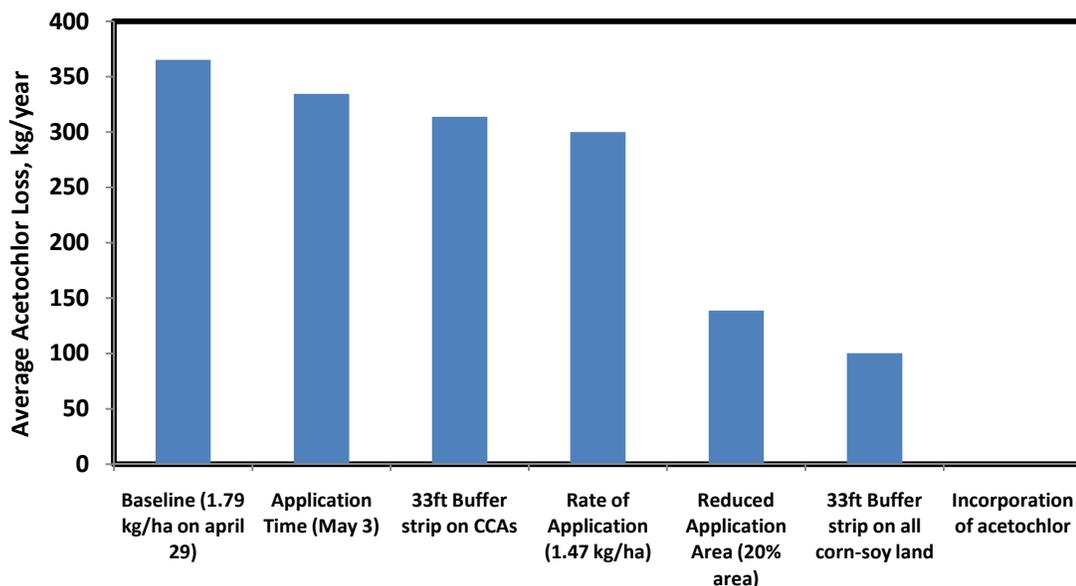


Figure 6-13: Relative Importance of Acetochlor Management Practices in the LRW

## 6.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Despite all the advantages of pesticides, high pesticide usage can have unintended effects on surface and ground water quality. In this study the movement and fate of the pesticides acetochlor, metolachlor, and atrazine were studied using the SWAT model in the LRW of South Central Minnesota. Monitoring results showed frequent detections of these herbicides in surface waters of the LRW. This study was intended to investigate management options that can mitigate the prevailing contamination and maintain the future sustainability of water quality in the LRW and the Minnesota River Basin. The model was calibrated in the Beauford sub-watershed and applied to the entire LRW.

SWAT predictions of monthly average losses of acetochlor, atrazine and metolachlor were very accurate with NSE values of 0.96, 0.91 and 0.71, respectively. The loss of all the three pesticides was primarily in solution form. Acetochlor had the largest (93%) loss in solution form, and metolachlor has the largest sorbed loss of 18%. About 4.1% of the acetochlor applied in 2005 and 0.01% of atrazine and metolachlor reached the mouth of the Beauford sub-watershed. The estimated average annual loss of acetochlor, atrazine, and metolachlor from the LRW were 0.47%, 0.02% and 0.0034% of the total annual application.

Reducing the baseline application rate to 1.47 kg/ha and application area to 20% of the corn fields minimized losses by 17% and 56%, respectively. Increasing application rate to 2.45 kg/ha and application area to 50% increased losses by 37% and 117% of the baseline scenario. Combining reduced rate application (1.47 kg/ha) and incorporation of acetochlor can reduce losses by over 95%. A change in application time to post emergence on May 3 reduces the loss by only 9%. Although vegetative filter strips were predicted to reduce acetochlor losses by over 60%, the mechanism for these reductions is unclear given that acetochlor losses occur primarily in solution form.

**Chapter 7 : SWAT MODELING OF SURFACE WATER QUALITY  
IMPACTS OF ALTERNATIVE BIOFUEL CROPS  
AND CROP RESIDUE REMOVAL**

## **SYNOPSIS**

Corn ethanol production in Minnesota has increased to nearly 3.2 billion liters per year, requiring corn grain from roughly 25% of Minnesota's corn acreage. Minnesota corn acreage increased 14% between 2006 and 2007. Most of this increase was due to loss of soybean acreage and the shift from a corn-soybean to a corn-corn-soybean rotation. As a result of this shift, Minnesota producers applied more nitrogen and phosphorus fertilizer.

The objective of this section of the research was to quantify the impacts on water quality of increases in corn acreage, and removal of crop residue or switchgrass plantings for cellulosic ethanol production. The Soil Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) model was used to evaluate the overall impacts of increased corn acreage on water quality due to sediment, nutrient and pesticide losses. The study was conducted in the Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW) of South Central Minnesota, where a corn-soybean rotation is the dominant cropping system. The SWAT model was calibrated over two years and validated over four years for monthly and annual water yield, sediment yield, total nitrogen and total phosphorus outflows. Water quality impacts were studied with a baseline corn-soybean rotation in comparison with a corn-corn-soybean rotation and a biofuel production alternative involving extensive plantings of switchgrass on environmentally sensitive landscapes. Impacts of various crop residue removal rates were also studied.

Model simulation results indicated that increased corn acreage had no significant impact on the annual water yield (98.7%), but increased sediment yield and total phosphorus losses by 14%, and total nitrate-N losses by 53%. Compared to the baseline scenario, phosphorus and sediment losses were increased by up to 51% and 71%, respectively, for 60% residue removal under a corn-corn-soy rotation. Switchgrass established on land steeper than 2% slope reduced sediment yield, phosphorus and nitrate-N losses by 73%, 39 % and 9%, respectively.

## 7.1. INTRODUCTION

The goal of the Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 (EISA) is to produce 36 billion gallons of renewable fuel annually by the year 2022. This includes 42% from corn-grain based ethanol, 45% from cellulosic ethanol and 13% from other advanced biofuel sources (Congress, 2007).

The dramatic expansion in ethanol production increased demand for biofuel feedstock production, which in turn had some influence on higher prices for corn and other grain crops. As a result, producers in the US corn belt have increased corn acreage. Cultivated cropland in the corn belt is expected to further expand by up to 1.6 million acres by 2016 (Malcolm and Aillery, 2009; Donner and Kucharik, 2008).

Despite all efforts to advance development of technologies that use cellulose-based biofuel production, currently available technology is largely based on corn grain ethanol production. Corn residue and switchgrass have been identified as promising biofuel feedstocks for cellulosic ethanol production (Graham et al., 2007; McLaughlin et al., 1999). Corn residue or stover, consisting of the stalks, leaves, and cobs remaining aboveground after the corn kernels are harvested, represents a primary biomass source to produce cellulosic ethanol. This source of biomass residue amounts to 220 million tons dry weight in the US. About 30% to 60% of the stover can be harvested to provide up to 10 % of total gasoline needs (Perlack et al., 2005). Corn stover is composed of about 70 percent cellulose and hemicellulose, and 15 to 20 percent lignin. Cellulose and hemicellulose can be converted to ethanol, and the lignin burned as a boiler fuel for electricity generation. Around 130 gallons of cellulosic ethanol could be produced per ton of corn stover (Glassner et al., 1998). However, the lack of commercial cellulosic biomass conversion technologies has precluded the widespread harvest of corn residues for this purpose until recently (Mann et al., 2002). Corn stover could supply as much as 25 percent of the biofuel crop biomass needed by 2030 (Wilhelm et al., 2007).

Maintaining crop residue on the soil surface helps control surface runoff, soil erosion, nutrient losses and contamination of water resources (Mann et al., 2002).

Removing corn stover can reduce evapotranspiration by cooling the soil surface and plant roots (Wagger and Denton, 1992). Linden et al. (2000) in their study in east central Minnesota, reported that residue removal can minimize soil moisture and increase soil temperatures, which in turn increases decomposition rates and could increase water stress Holt (1979) reported that residue harvest removes more nutrients than grain harvest alone, the greatest loss was predicted for the U.S. Midwest.

The amount of residue required to protect the loss of sediment and nutrients from surface soils varies depending on soil type, slope, crop rotation, tillage system and existing conservation practices (Wilhelm et al., 2007; Cruse and Herndl, 2009) According to Charles (2009), no-till practices on slopes less than 2% leaving 1 ton/acre residue are generally sufficient to reduce water erosion to less than 5 tons/acre/ per year. Under tilled conditions with a slope of more than 5%, more than 5 tons/acre residue may be required. Leaving more than 4 tons/ acre will be required on tilled row crop rotations (Charles, 2009).

With the limited available land resources, the production of food crops and crop residues may not be the only option for biofuel production. Producing environmentally and economically competitive bioenergy crops depends on the availability of low-cost and high biomass feedstocks (Graham et al., 1995). In this regard, switchgrass has been identified as an energy crop that can successfully grow across a wide range of climatic conditions (Vogel, 1996). Switchgrass has promising biofuel attributes, including its high biomass production, and low chloride and ash contents (Lemus et al., 2002). It provides year-round soil cover that reduces soil erosion and potential water contamination of water resources from sediment and nutrient runoff losses. These benefits can be credited to the density of switchgrass stems and roots, which promote soil stability, increase infiltration, and slow runoff (Redfearn et al., 1997; Woolsey, 1992).

### **7.1.1. Problem Statement**

The State of Minnesota produces about one billion gallons of ethanol annually, which is 8.4% of the total U.S. production (RFA, 2009). Corn ethanol production in Minnesota has increased to nearly 3.2 billion liters per year, requiring corn grain from roughly 25% of Minnesota's corn acreage. Consequently, Minnesota corn acreage increased by 14% between 2006 and 2007 (USDA NASS, 2009). Most of this increase was due to loss of soybean acreage, and shift from a corn-soybean to a corn-corn-soybean rotation. Some of the additional acreage planted to corn came from Conservation Reserve Program (CRP) land (Lakes, 2007). As a result, Minnesota producers applied more nitrogen and phosphorus fertilizers. The increase in applied chemical inputs associated with increases in corn acreage are a threat to water quality (Thomas et al., 2009; Vaché et al., 2002).

It is important to understand the environmental implications of shifts in cropping systems and crop management associated with biofuel production. A SWAT modeling approach was used to analyze the water quality impacts of changes in the cropping systems and crop management to produce biofuel crops in the Le Sueur River Watershed (LRW). The water quality impacts of alternative scenarios were quantified for a baseline corn-soybean rotation, and compared to results involving a shift from a corn-soy to a corn-corn-soy rotation, removal of crop residue for cellulosic biofuel production and extensive plantings of switchgrass.

### **7.1.2. Objectives**

The specific objectives of the LRW SWAT biofuel crop modeling project are:

- To evaluate water quality impacts of biofuel crop production alternatives, including:
  - A shift from a corn-soy to a corn-corn-soy rotation
  - Removal of crop residue for cellulosic biofuel production
  - Planting switchgrass

### 7.1.3. Models of Crop Growth

Crop growth models are important tools for evaluating agricultural management strategies that optimize crop production while improving water quality and reducing environmental degradation (Jame and Cutforth, 1996). Several crop growth models have been developed in the last three decades. These models can be categorized in to two broad categories, empirical regression models and mechanistic models. Regression models describe the crop growth with empirical functions and little attention to mechanisms involved. Mechanistic models, on the other hand, consider growth processes such as daily dry matter accumulation as a function of crop growth stage (Spitters, 1989; Jame and Cutforth, 1996). The selection and application of mechanistic crop growth models depends on the type of problem to be studied, the details of climate, crop type, cropping patterns/rotations, soil quality indicators, and potential management interventions to be studied. Appropriate mathematical representation of major crop physiological processes and reliability of input parameters determine the prediction accuracy of process-based crop growth models. Crop growth models must accurately predict mean grain yields and describe much of the year to year variability in yields over a range of conditions (Kiniry et al., 1997; Zhai et al., 2001).

Commonly used mechanistic crop growth models include the Agricultural Land Management Alternatives with Numerical Assessment Criteria (ALMANAC) (Kiniry et al., 1992), CropSyst (Stöckle et al., 2003), Crop-Environment Resource Synthesis (CERES) (Jones et al., 1986), and Erosion Productivity Impact Calculator (EPIC) (Williams et al., 1984). The ALMANAC and CropSyst models are process-oriented models that can simulate crop growth and its interaction with management and the surrounding environment. These models were designed based on the concepts of EPIC and have additional detail for plant growth. The CERES and EPIC models are comprehensive crop–soil system simulation models that utilize a daily time step to model crop phenology as a function of accumulated heat units or degree days. The CERES model consists of six cereal models: wheat, maize, barley, sorghum, millet and

rice (Hasegawa et al., 1999). Hodges et al. (1987) have used the CERES-Maize model to estimate annual fluctuations in corn production for the U.S. Corn-belt.

## **7.2. MATERILAS AND METHODS**

### **7.2.1. Study Area**

The LRW is located in the US corn-belt region, specifically in south-central Minnesota. Land use in the watershed is dominated by two year rotations of corn-soybean production. Compared to corn-soybean rotations, continuous-corn rotations demand a higher level of nitrogen and phosphorus fertilizers. An increase in corn acreage in the LRW is associated with increases in the application of fertilizer and pesticides, potentially leading to degradation of surface water quality. According to Donner et al. (2008), an increase in corn production to meet the 2022 goal of 15-billion-gallon ethanol production would increase the area of hypoxia in the Gulf of Mexico by 10-18% (Donner and Kucharik, 2008).

### **7.2.2. Data Collection and Analysis**

The SWAT model was used to evaluate biofuel feedstock production in the LRW and the resulting impacts on sediment and chemical pollutants. Plant growth and production simulations were made after the model was calibrated and validated for hydrology, sediment and nutrients (chapters 2-5). Simulation of LRW alternative biofuel crop growth and yield was made based on spatial and temporal variability of weather (temperature, precipitation, solar radiation, and humidity conditions), soil and management conditions for the years from 1990 to 2006.

Four different scenarios were simulated. The baseline scenario was the commonly used corn-soybean rotation system. Management operations for the baseline condition were described in previous chapters. The second scenario involved expansion of corn acreage by about 17%/year due to increased acreage of the corn-corn-soybean rotation. The third scenario involved extensive switchgrass plantings on CRP lands, critical contributing areas (CCAs), on 15% low corn yielding land and on all fields with slopes

steeper than 2%. The fourth scenario was the removal of crop residue for cellulosic ethanol production. This involves 10%, 30% and 60% residue removal rates.

The total heat units required for growing corn and soybeans in the Le Sueur watershed was calculated using potential heat units based on a long-term climatic record (1990-2006) from the North Mankato station. The crop growth parameters (such as maximum leaf area index, canopy height, root depth) were set to the SWAT model default values. Management operations in the CS rotation differed from those in the CCS rotation by virtue of changes in tillage from chisel plow to moldboard plow and 43 kg/ha additional N-fertilizer during the second year of corn. For the corn residue removal scenario, every 1% of corn residue removed required an additional 0.6 kg of N fertilizer, assuming there is 60 kg/ha N in the corn residue. This assumption was based on Burgess et al., (2002) in which they reported corn residues can contain 40-80 kg N/ha depending on yield and N concentrations.

The water quality effects of switchgrass planted in the LRW was evaluated. Switchgrass was established in the watershed without tillage, however, atrazine (1.68 kg/ha) was applied during the establishment year, and 51 kg/ha of nitrogen fertilizer was applied annually. Assuming there will soon be a switchgrass cultivar producing more than the current 4 ton/ha biomass yield, the SWAT model was set to achieve a targeted biomass yield of 11 ton/ha.

The calibration of corn and soybean Leaf Area Index (LAI) was made using measured data from two sites (G19 and G21) at Rosemount, MN from 2004-2006. The two sites were under a corn soybean rotation with conventional management. Crop yield was calibrated in the Beauford sub-watershed and validated for the entire LRW based on the NASS crop area and harvest for the years 1994-2006. Crop growth was modeled using management operation timing inputs and estimated plant heat units following the approach presented in the SWAT theoretical documentation (Neitsch et al., 2005).

### 7.2.2.1. Crop Growth Simulation Processes in SWAT Model

The SWAT model crop growth routines are adapted from EPIC. SWAT computes potential plant growth under optimal conditions with adequate water and nutrient supply and a favorable climate, and then computes actual growth under stresses of temperature, water and nutrients. The crop growth attributes summarized in the crop growth database and in the management operations timing file control the crop growth cycle in the SWAT model. Leaf area development, fraction of nutrients in the total plant biomass at different stages of crop growth, radiation use efficiency and its conversion to biomass are the major components used for crop growth simulation.

Temperature is one of the most important and limiting factors governing plant growth. SWAT uses the potential heat unit (PHU) theory to regulate the growth cycle of plants. According to the heat unit theory, each plant has specific heat/temperature requirements that makes it grow to maturity. The minimum, optimum, and maximum temperature ranges required for plant growth vary from plant to plant. The accumulation of daily mean air temperatures above the plant's base temperature is recorded over the period of the plant's growth and expressed in terms of heat units. Each degree of the daily mean temperature above the base temperature is one heat unit. The heat unit accumulation for a given day is calculated with the equation:

$$HU = \bar{T} - T_{\text{base}} \quad \text{When } \bar{T} \geq T_{\text{base}} \quad (7.1)$$

The total number of heat units required for a plant to reach maturity is calculated using:

$$PHU = \sum_{d=1}^m HU \quad (7.2)$$

Where  $PHU$  is the total heat units required for plant maturity (heat units),  $HU$  is the number of heat units accumulated on day  $d$  where  $d = 1$  on the day of planting and  $m$  is the number of days required for a plant to reach maturity.  $PHU$  is also referred to as potential heat units.

The biomass production component of SWAT model uses plant species-specific radiation-use efficiency calculated using the procedures of Monteith and Moss (1977).

$$\Delta bio = RUE * H_{phosyn} \quad (7.3)$$

Where  $\Delta bio$  is the potential increase in total plant biomass on a given day (kg/ha), RUE is the radiation-use efficiency of the plant kg/ha/(MJ/m<sup>2</sup>), and  $H_{phosyn}$  is the amount of intercepted photosynthetically active radiation on a given day (MJ /m<sup>2</sup>).

The total biomass on a given day,  $d$ , is calculated as:

$$bio = \sum_{i=1}^d \Delta bio_i \quad (7.4)$$

Where  $bio$  is the total plant biomass on a given day (kg/ha), and  $\Delta bio_i$  is the increase in total plant biomass on day  $i$  (kg/ha).

The daily solar radiation intercepted by the leaf area of the plant is calculated based on Beer's Law (Monsi and Saeki, 1953).

$$H_{phosyn} = 0.5 * H_{day} * (1 - \exp(-K_t * LAI)) \quad (7.5)$$

Where  $H_{phosyn}$  is the amount of intercepted photosynthetically active radiation (400-700 nm wavelength) on a given day (MJ m<sup>-2</sup>),  $H_{day}$  is the incident total solar (MJ m<sup>-2</sup>), 0.5.  $H_{day}$  is the incident photosynthetically active radiation (MJ m<sup>-2</sup>),  $K_t$  is the light extinction coefficient, and  $LAI$  is the leaf area index.

The total LAI is calculated from the leaf area added over each day of the crop growth.

$$LAI_i = LAI_{i-1} + \Delta LAI_i \quad (7.6)$$

$$\Delta LAI_i = (fr_{LAI_{mx},i} - fr_{LAI_{mx},i-1}) * LAI_{mx} * (1 - \exp(5 * (LAI_{i-1} - LAI_{mx}))) \quad (7.7)$$

Where  $\Delta LAI_i$  is the leaf area added on day  $i$ ,  $LAI_i$  and  $LAI_{i-1}$  are the leaf area indices for day  $i$  and  $i-1$  respectively,  $fr_{LAI_{mx},i}$  and  $fr_{LAI_{mx},i-1}$  are the fraction of the plant's maximum leaf area index, and  $LAI_{mx}$  is the maximum leaf area index for the crop.

The maximum LAI is calculated using:

$$fr_{LAI_{mx}} = \frac{fr_{PHU}}{fr_{PHU} + \exp(L1 - L2 * fr_{PHU})} \quad (7.8)$$

where  $fr_{LAI_{mx}}$  is the fraction of the plant's maximum leaf area index corresponding to a given fraction of potential heat units for the plant,  $fr_{PHU}$  is the fraction of potential heat units accumulated for the plant on a given day in the growing season, and  $L1$  and  $L2$  are shape coefficients.

The fraction of potential heat units,  $fr_{PHU}$  accumulated by a given date,  $d$  is calculated as:

$$fr_{PHU} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^d HU_i}{PHU} \quad (7.9)$$

Where  $HU$  is the heat units accumulated on day  $i$  and  $PHU$  is the total potential heat units for the plant.

### 7.3. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Sustainable biofuel crop production provides net environmental benefits that can maintain air, water and soil quality. Conventional production of crops and crop residue feedstocks for bioenergy, however, typically involves activities that adversely impact water quality (Donner and Kucharik, 2008 ). Farm management practices that often degrade water quality include moldboard tillage, artificial drainage, and over-application of fertilizer and pesticides.

#### 7.3.1. Baseline Crop Production Scenario

The baseline crop production scenario involved a two-year corn-soybean rotation practiced by the majority of growers in South Central Minnesota and the LRW. The planting dates of corn and soybean were set at May 1 and May 15, respectively, for all simulation years. Fall chisel plowing and spring field cultivation was used for corn-soybean production on flat, poorly drained soils of the LRW. Management operation input data specific to the corn and soybean planting years are shown in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1: Scheduled Management Operations for Baseline Corn-Soybean Rotation

Year	Crop type	Management operation	Date
Year 1	Corn	- Secondary tillage Cultivation (Field Cultivator)	28-Apr
		- Planting corn	1-May
		- 18-46-00 @ 163 lb/ac	1-May
		- Metolachlor application (2.21 lb/ac)	3-May
		- Acetochlor application (1.6 lb/ac)	29-Apr
		- Atrazine application (0.59 lb/ac)	29-Apr
		- Harvest/kill	20-Oct
		- Primary Tillage (Chisel Plow)	25-Oct
Year 2	Soybean	- Secondary tillage Cultivation (Field Cultivator)	May 12
		- Planting soybean	15-May
		- Metolachlor (0.89 lb/ac)	14-May
		- Harvest/kill	7-Oct
		- Primary Tillage (Chisel Plow)	12-Oct
		- Swine fresh manure application	30-Oct
		- Broiler Fresh Manure	24-Apr
		- Dairy fresh manure	30-Oct
- Anhydrous ammonia @ 120 lb/ac (injected)	1-Nov		

Note: Acetochlor was applied to 35% of the corn acreage; Atrazine to 15% of the corn acreage; Metolachlor to 4% of corn and 1% of soy acreage

### 7.3.1.1. Plant Heat Units (PHUs)

The base temperature required to initiate growth of corn, soybean and switchgrass in the Le Sueur watershed was set at 10 °C. The optimum temperature was set at 25 °C for corn and soybean, and 30 °C for switchgrass. When optimum temperature is exceeded, the growth rate will slow down until a maximum temperature is reached, at which time growth ceases.

The average annual PHU for the period from 1990-2006 in the Beauford sub-watershed was about 1714 (Figure 7-1 to Figure 7-3). Since the total heat units required for growing corn, soybean and switchgrass in the LRW are 1490 HU, 1256 HU and 1350 HU, respectively (Table 7-2), there is no temperature stress to grow these crops.

Table 7-2: PHU for crops in the LRW

NAME	Days to maturity	Total heat units required (PHU)
Alfalfa	90	1132
Barley	105	1435
Corn	120	1490
Oats	105	1435
Potato	100	1296
Rye	90	1210
Soybeans	120	1256
Switchgrass	150	1350

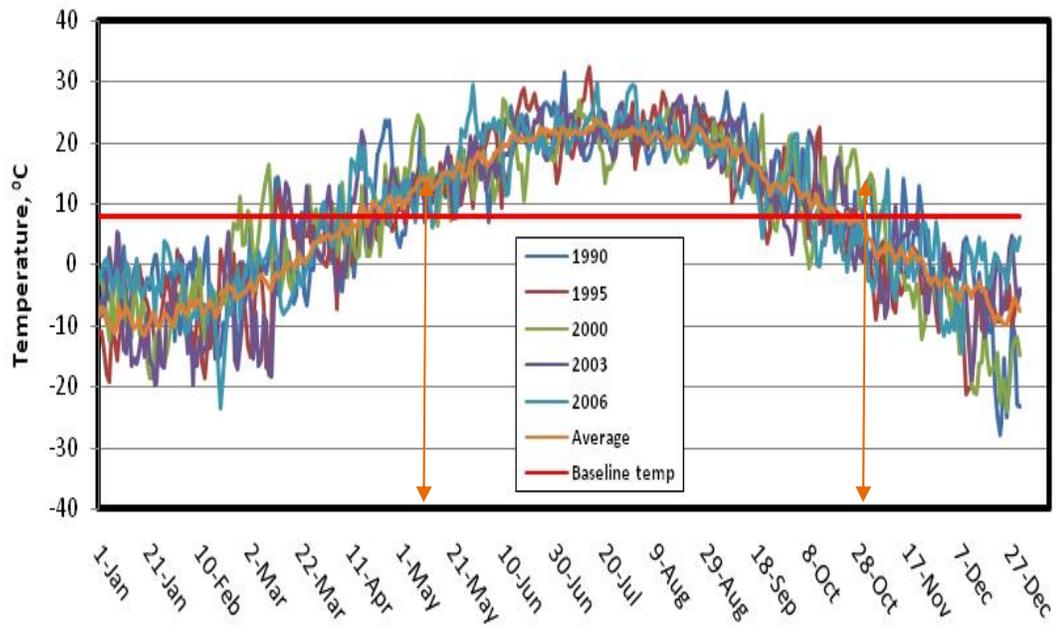


Figure 7-1: Optimum temperature to grow corn-soybean and switchgrass in the LRW

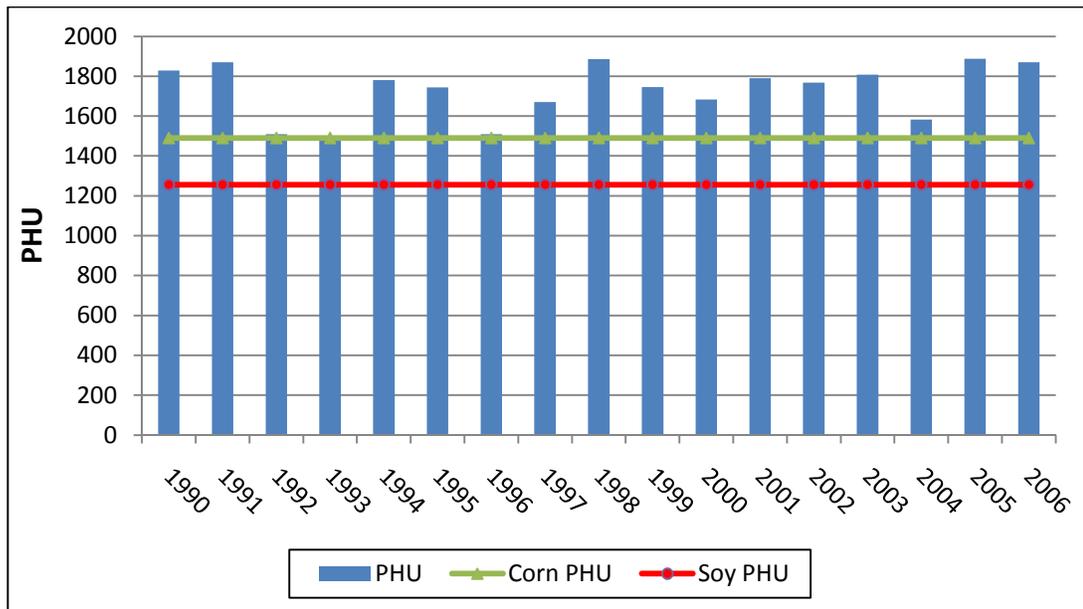


Figure 7-2: PHU in the LRW 1990-2006

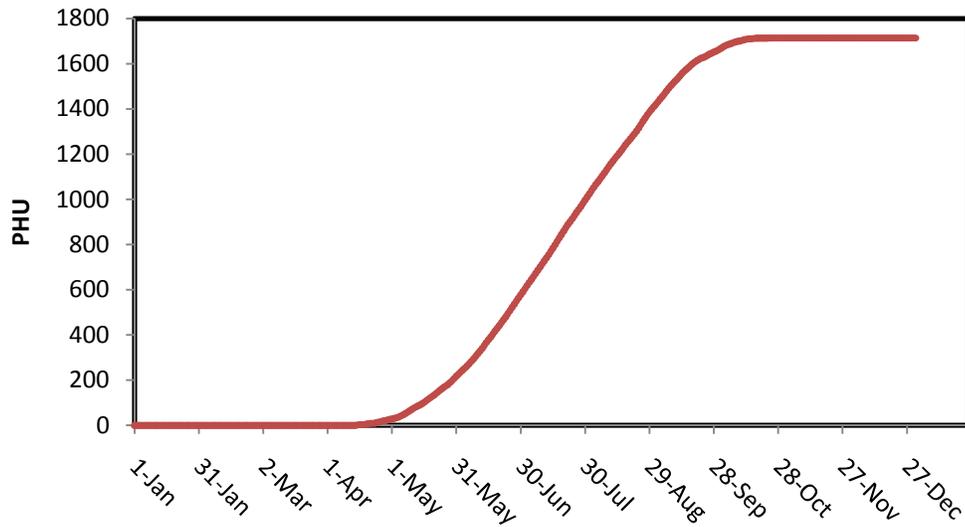


Figure 7-3 : Cumulative average annual PHU in the LRW

### 7.3.1.2. Calibration of Leaf Area Index (LAI)

LAI is the ratio of leaf area to the projected area of the crop canopy. It is the component of crop growth analysis that accounts for the ability of the crop to capture light energy and is critical to understanding the function of many crop management practices. LAI increases from planting to flowering, and decreases from flowering to maturity.

The calibration of LAI was made using measured data at Rosemount, MN from 2004-2006. The LAI of corn and soybean were measured at two sites (G19 and G21) under a corn soybean rotation with conventional management. The calibrated maximum LAI of corn and soybeans in the crop data base were set at 7 and 6 m<sup>2</sup>/m<sup>2</sup>, respectively (Figure 7-4 and Figure 7-5).

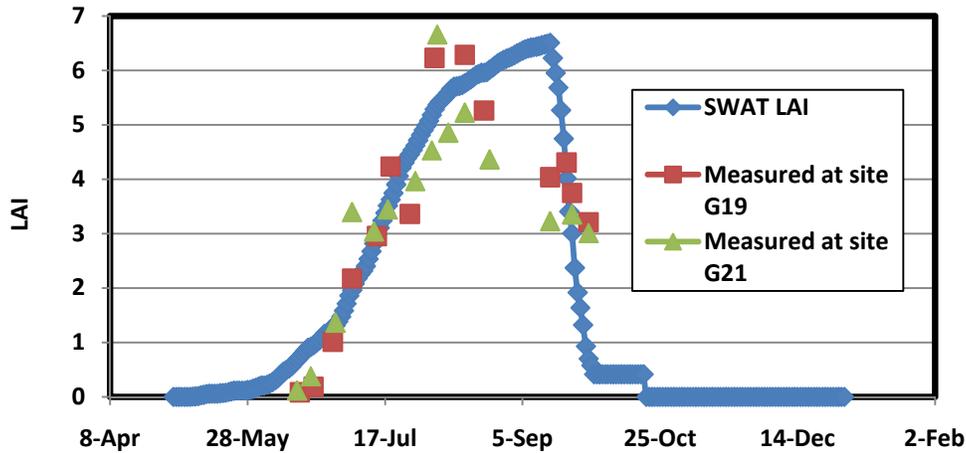


Figure 7-4 : Corn LAI calibration

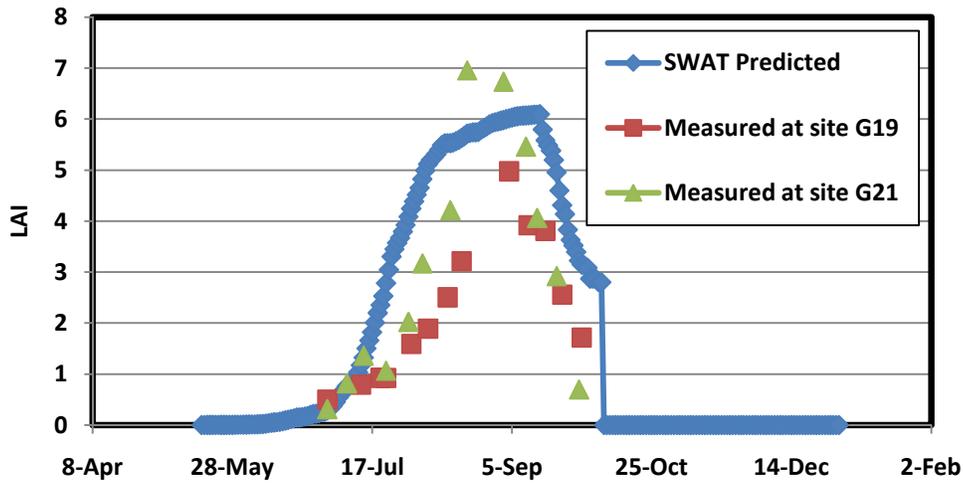


Figure 7-5: Soybean LAI calibration

### 7.3.1.3. Calibration of Crop Yield and Biomass Production

The crop input data file for biomass and grain production was calibrated in the Beauford sub-watershed, and applied to the entire LRW. Crop nutrient uptake and growth parameters needed to estimate biomass yield are shown in the plant growth database.. The simulated and observed average production data corresponded fairly well to each other in the Beauford sub-watershed as presented in Table 7-3 and Table 7-4. Corn yield predicted prior to 2001 was higher than the measured yield. This may be due to the fact that the model does not consider genetic improvement in the corn cultivars or

stress from high rainfall during the growing season. The model estimated yield was satisfactory.

Table 7-3: Measured and predicted corn grain yield at Beauford sub-watershed

Year	Measured, ton/ha	Predicted, ton/ha
1994	9.89	12.91
1995	8.68	11.04
1996	9.42	12.91
1997	9.68	10.68
1998	11.10	11.51
1999	10.56	11.87
2000	9.95	12.36
2001	8.81	11.26
2002	10.96	11.18
2003	11.03	11.44
2004	12.11	12.40
2005	12.37	11.63
2006	11.77	12.01
Average	10.49	11.78

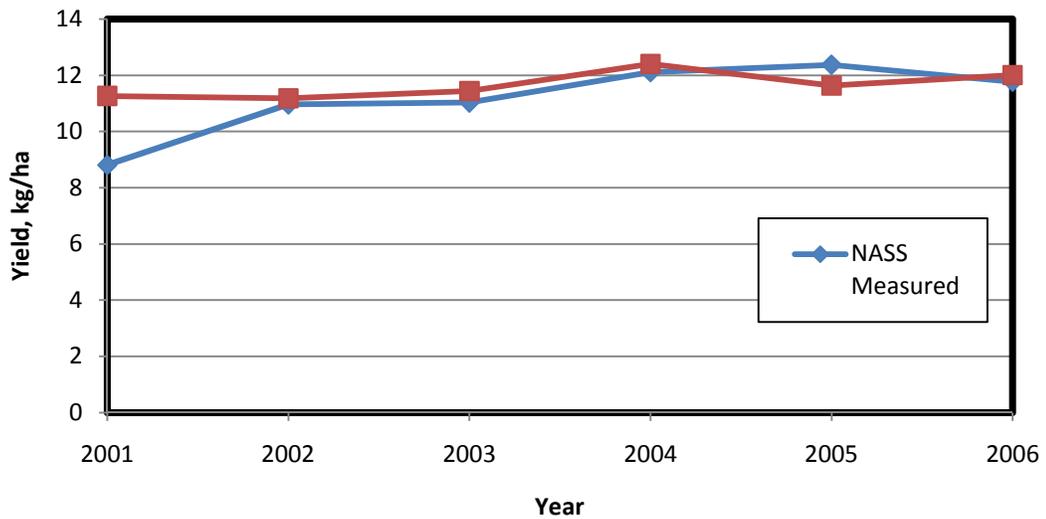


Figure 7-6: Calibration of corn grain yield

Table 7-4: Measured and predicted soybean grain yield in the Beauford sub-watershed

Year	Measured, ton/ha	Predicted, ton/ha
1999	3.03	2.88
2000	3.03	3.11
2001	2.56	2.71
2002	3.36	2.81
2003	2.35	2.91
2004	2.89	2.66
2005	3.50	2.86
2006	3.70	3.01
Average	3.02	2.90

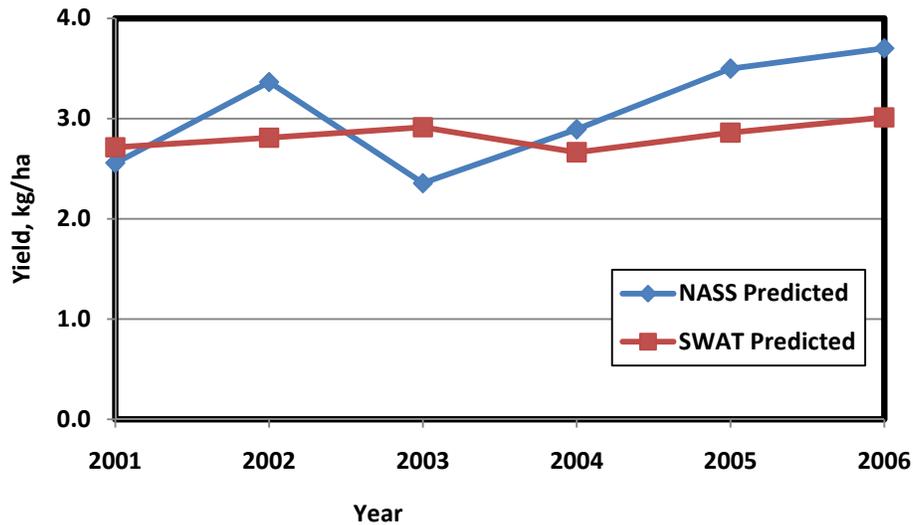


Figure 7-7: Calibration of soybean grain yield in the Beauford sub-watershed

#### 7.3.1.4. LRW Crop Yield and Biomass Estimates

The SWAT model average annual corn and soybean grain production estimates for the LRW were 1.29 and 0.32 million tons, respectively. Compared to the total corn-soy production of LRW counties, adjusted for the production area proportion, the SWAT

estimated grain yield was about 89% of the actual production. There was a 31% increase in corn biomass and residue production as a result of the shift from a corn-soybean to a corn-corn-soybean rotation (Table 7-5) .

Table 7-5: Corn and Soybean grain and biomass yield under different rotations in the LRW

Rotation	Crop	Area, ha	Biomass, t/ha	Yield, t/ha	Biomass, ton	Yield, ton	Residue Produced, ton
C-S	Corn	116746	21.65	11.06	2524696	1290091	1234605
C-S	Soybean	116746	5.30	2.71	617683	315802	301882
C-C-S	Corn	155661	21.21	10.8	3316837	1695209	1621628
C-C-S	Soybean	77831	5.69	2.73	443481	212950	230531

### **7.3.2. Water Quality Impacts of Shifting from a Corn-Soybean to a Corn-Corn-Soybean Rotation**

The LRW is located in the US corn-belt. Land use in the watershed is dominated by two year rotations of corn-soybean production. NASS recently showed an increase in corn acreage and a decrease in soybean acreage for the Blue Earth, Faribault, Freeborn, Steele and Waseca counties in the LRW (USDA NASS, 2009). An increase in corn prices associated with high biofuel demand is the major cause for the increase in corn acreage. Corn acreage in the LRW increased by 11% from 2006 to 2007. Soybean acreage for the same time period decreased by 10%, indicating the shift from soybean to corn (Figure 7-8 and Figure 7-9).

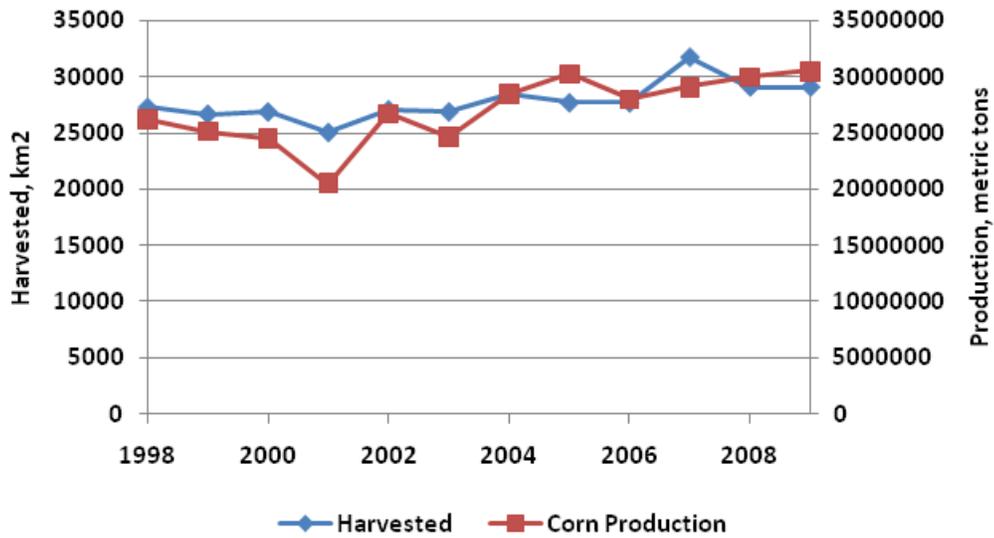


Figure 7-8: Corn acreage and production in LRW

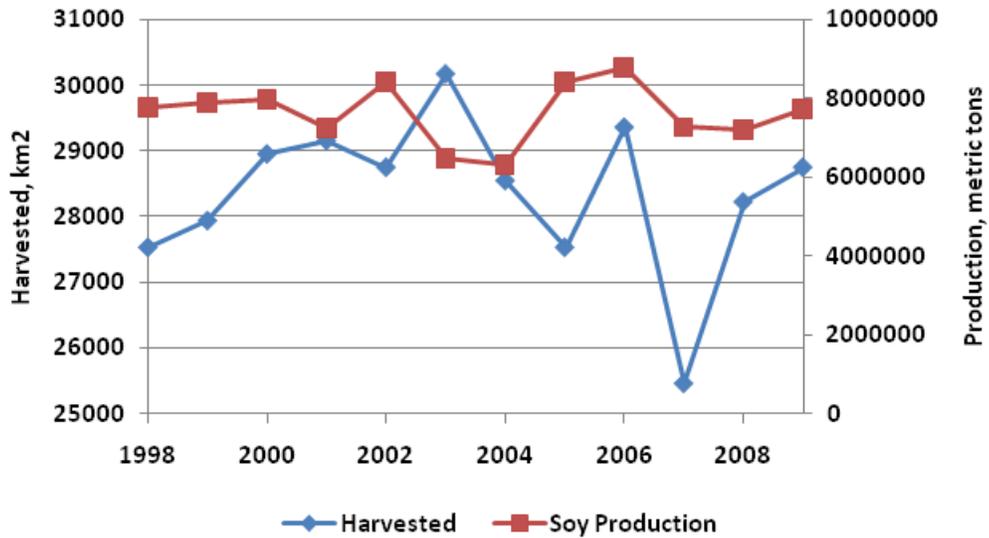


Figure 7-9: Soybean acreage and production in LRW

Compared to a corn-soybean rotation, a continuous-corn rotation demands higher levels of nitrogen and phosphorus fertilizers. Thus, if the increase in ethanol leads to planting more corn acres, the applied additional fertilizers and pesticides would become a big threat for the water quality. According to Donner et al (2008), an increase in corn

production to meet the 2022 goal of 15-billion-gallon ethanol production would increase the size of the Gulf hypoxic zone by 10-18% (Donner and Kucharik, 2008).

Primary tillage in the corn-soy rotation involves chisel plowing, while it involves moldboard plowing after the first year of corn in the corn-corn-soy rotation. The shift from a corn-soy to a corn-corn-soy rotation also involves application of an additional 43 kg/ha of N-fertilizer during the second year of corn.

SWAT predictions show that the shift from a corn-soy to a corn-corn-soy rotation has no pronounced effect on the hydrology of the LRW (Table 7-6). However, this shift would increase the sediment yield and total phosphorus losses by 14%. In addition, there would be a 53% increase in the total nitrate-N losses (Table 7-6). This large increase is associated with application of extra N fertilizer in the CCS rotation.

Table 7-6: Water quality impacts of shifting from a C-S to a C-C-S rotation

<b>Component</b>	<b>C-S</b>	<b>C-C-S</b>	<b>% Change</b>
<b>I. Hydrology, mm</b>			
Precipitation	840.8	840.8	0.0
Surface runoff	88.2	89.02	0.9
Lateral flow	9.7	9.6	-1.0
Groundwater flow	24.8	24.7	-0.4
Tile flow	108.7	105.1	-3.3
Evapotranspiration	599.7	602.8	0.5
Water yield	230.2	227.2	-1.3
<b>II. Sediment Yield, ton/ha</b>	<b>1.83</b>	<b>2.08</b>	<b>13.7</b>
<b>III. Phosphorus Loss, kg/ha</b>	<b>0.70</b>	<b>0.80</b>	<b>14.3</b>
Organic P	0.21	0.24	14.3
Soluble P	0.15	0.15	0.0
Sediment P	0.35	0.41	17.1
<b>IV. Nitrate-N, kg/ha</b>	<b>18.01</b>	<b>27.50</b>	<b>52.7</b>
Organic N	1.76	2.03	15.3
Surface Runoff NO <sub>3</sub>	2.13	2.63	23.5
Tile Drainage NO <sub>3</sub>	13.53	22.03	62.8
Ground Water NO <sub>3</sub>	0.59	0.81	37.3

### 7.3.3. Water Quality Impacts of Planting Switchgrass

The water quality impacts of planting switchgrass were estimated using four different strategies for planting switchgrass (Table 7-7). For each of the four scenarios, the SWAT model was set to achieve a biomass yield of 11 ton/ha in anticipation of genetic improvements obtained by new research. Switchgrass biomass production varies from 13,541 tons if it is planted only on existing CRP parcels to over 637,000 tons if planted on all corn-soybean critical contributing areas (CCAs) (Table 7-7). The other two scenarios produce roughly 400,000 tons of switchgrass biomass and involve planting switchgrass on the lowest 15% of corn production land or planting switchgrass on all fields with slopes steeper than 2%.

Table 7-7: Switchgrass production potential in the LRW

Scenario	Planted Area, ha	Biomass, tons
SG on 15% Low Yielding CS land	40,463	445,093
SG on all CS CCAs	57,911	637,021
SG on CS land > 2% slope	30,699	337,689
SG on all CRP lands	1,231	13,541

Switchgrass production tended to increase the evapotranspiration relative to the baseline CS rotation (Table 7-8). As a result, there was a 7 mm or 0.8% decrease in the surface runoff and total water yield. Water quality benefits of switchgrass plantings were significant for some planting strategies. Planting switchgrass on land steeper than 2% slope reduced sediment yield, phosphorus and nitrate-N losses by 73%, 39 % and 9% respectively, relative to the CS rotation (Table 7-8) . Planting switchgrass on steep lands produces much greater water quality benefits than planting switchgrass on all CCAs or on the lowest yielding (marginal) corn-soybean land. However, the water quality benefits of planting switchgrass on marginal lands are still significant. Planting switchgrass on small acreage of CRP lands did not show significant water quality benefits relative to the CS rotation with existing CRP parcels (Table 7-8).

Table 7-8: Water quality effects of planting switchgrass in the LRW

<b>Component</b>	<b>C-S</b>	<b>SG on 15% Low Yielding CS land</b>	<b>SG on all CCAs</b>	<b>SG on CS land &gt; 2% Slope</b>	<b>SG on all CRP lands</b>
<b>I. Hydrology, mm</b>					
Precipitation	840.8	840.8	840.8	840.8	840.8
Surface runoff	88.2	82.5	81.6	83.7	88.3
Lateral flow	9.7	9.9	10.1	11.5	9.4
Groundwater flow	24.8	24.1	21.2	24.9	24.5
Tile flow	108.7	111.2	111.5	109.2	108.1
Evapotranspiration,	599.7	603.4	606.4	601.6	601.0
Water yield	230.2	226.6	223.3	228.1	228.9
<b>II. Sediment Yield, ton/ha</b>	<b>1.83</b>	<b>1.37</b>	<b>1.30</b>	<b>0.49</b>	<b>1.85</b>
<b>III. Phosphorus Loss, kg/ha</b>	<b>0.70</b>	<b>0.54</b>	<b>0.51</b>	<b>0.43</b>	<b>0.68</b>
Organic P	0.21	0.16	0.14	0.06	0.20
Soluble P	0.15	0.13	0.12	0.11	0.14
Sediment P	0.35	0.26	0.25	0.26	0.33
<b>IV. Nitrate-N, kg/ha</b>	<b>18.01</b>	<b>16.73</b>	<b>16.52</b>	<b>16.45</b>	<b>18.20</b>
Organic N	1.76	1.30	1.29	1.26	1.58
Surface Runoff NO <sub>3</sub>	2.13	1.92	1.83	1.76	2.22
Tile Drainage NO <sub>3</sub>	13.53	12.97	13.00	13.02	13.90
Ground Water NO <sub>3</sub>	0.59	0.54	0.40	0.41	0.50

#### **7.3.4. Water Quality Impacts of Corn Residue Removal for Cellulosic Ethanol Production**

Residue removal does not change water yield in the LRW under a CS rotation.

However, shifting to a corn-corn-soybean rotation reduces water yield by 3-7 mm, depending on the extent of residue removal. As residue is removed, surface roughness decreases, this explains the reduction in water yield.

Removing crop residue causes a linear increase in sediment yield for both the C-S and C-C-S rotations (Figure 7-10). For each of the three rates of residue removal (10%, 30% and 60%), the CCS rotation lost roughly 0.5 ton/ha more sediment than the corresponding CS rotation (Figure 7-100). Given that the LRW is already impaired for sediment pollution, increased removal of crop residue for cellulosic ethanol production would worsen the impairment under the CS rotation. Shifting to a CCS rotation would also worsen the sediment impairment, and removing crop residue under the CCS rotation would make the situation even worse. The adverse impacts on sediment of either crop residue removal or shifting to a CCS rotation could potentially be partially alleviated by agricultural BMPs such as riparian buffer strips or cover crops.

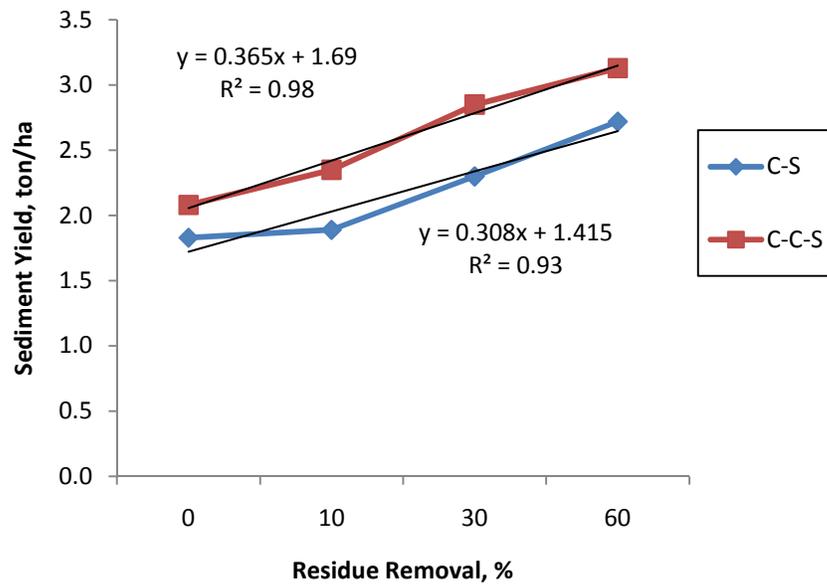


Figure 7-10: Sediment yield response to residue removal and changes in crop rotation

Table 7-9: Water quality impacts of residue removal under C-S rotation

Component	C-S			
	Baseline	10 %	30 %	60 %
<b>I. Hydrology, mm</b>				
Precipitation	840.8	840.8	840.8	840.8
Surface runoff	88.2	94.8	94.8	94.8
Lateral flow	9.7	9.5	9.5	9.5
Groundwater flow	24.8	24.7	24.7	24.7
Tile flow	108.7	102.9	102.9	102.9
Evapotranspiration,	599.7	599.4	599.4	599.4
Water yield	230.2	230.5	230.5	230.5
<b>II. Sediment Yield, ton/ha</b>	<b>1.83</b>	<b>1.89</b>	<b>2.30</b>	<b>2.72</b>
<b>III. Phosphorus Loss, kg/ha</b>	<b>0.70</b>	<b>0.71</b>	<b>0.87</b>	<b>0.94</b>
Organic P	0.21	0.21	0.26	0.31
Soluble P	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15
Sediment P	0.35	0.35	0.46	0.48
<b>IV. Nitrate-N, kg/ha</b>	<b>18.01</b>	<b>17.81</b>	<b>18.25</b>	<b>18.74</b>
Organic N	1.76	1.89	2.35	2.83
Surface Runoff NO <sub>3</sub>	2.13	2.25	2.25	2.25
Tile Drainage NO <sub>3</sub>	13.53	13.09	13.08	13.08
Ground Water NO <sub>3</sub>	0.59	0.58	0.58	0.58

Table 7-10: Water quality impacts of residue removal under C-C-S rotation

Component	Baseline C-S	C-C-S			
		0% RR	10 % RR	30 % RR	60 % RR
<b>I. Hydrology, mm</b>					
Precipitation	840.8	840.8	840.8	840.8	840.8
Surface runoff	88.2	89.02	88.9	89.7	88.5
Lateral flow	9.7	9.6	9.6	9.5	9.5
Groundwater flow	24.8	24.7	24.7	24.6	24.5
Tile flow	108.7	105.1	104.8	102.8	102.7
Evapotranspiration,	599.7	602.8	603.4	604.8	606.2
Water yield	230.2	227.2	226.6	225.3	223.8
<b>II. Sediment Yield, ton/ha</b>	<b>1.83</b>	<b>2.08</b>	<b>2.35</b>	<b>2.85</b>	<b>3.13</b>
<b>III. Phosphorus Loss, kg/ha</b>	<b>0.70</b>	<b>0.80</b>	<b>0.87</b>	<b>1.00</b>	<b>1.06</b>
Organic P	0.21	0.24	0.26	0.31	0.33
Soluble P	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15
Sediment P	0.35	0.41	0.46	0.54	0.58
<b>IV. Nitrate-N, kg/ha</b>	<b>18.01</b>	<b>27.50</b>	<b>27.73</b>	<b>29.86</b>	<b>31.74</b>
Organic N	1.76	2.03	2.32	2.88	3.17
Surface Runoff NO <sub>3</sub>	2.13	2.63	2.63	2.80	2.79
Tile Drainage NO <sub>3</sub>	13.53	22.03	21.98	23.33	24.88
Ground Water NO <sub>3</sub>	0.59	0.81	0.81	0.85	0.90

Compared to the baseline scenario, phosphorus losses were increased by up to 34% and 51% for the highest rates of residue removal (60%) under C-S and C-C-S rotations, respectively. This increase was attributed mainly to increased sediment losses as described above.

Residue removal under the CS rotation did not have much impact on nitrate-N losses. In contrast, nitrate-N losses increased by about 60% in the shift from a C-S to a C-C-S rotation with no residue removal. Removing residue produced an additional 8% increase in nitrate-N losses for the CCS rotation at any specific residue removal rate. The main pathway for nitrate-N losses was through tile drainage (Table 7-9).

## 7.4. SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Policies to promote more corn ethanol production have resulted in increased corn acreage and the associated chemical fertilizer inputs in Minnesota and the LRW. NASS showed up to an 11% increase in corn acreage and a 10% decrease in soybean acreage for the LRW counties Blue Earth, Faribault, Freeborn, Steele and Waseca. This study investigated the risk to water quality associated with these changes.

The SWAT model was used to investigate the water quality impacts of increased corn acreage, switchgrass cultivation on marginal and CRP lands, and removal of crop residue for cellulosic ethanol production. Model predictions showed that increased corn acreage has no significant impact on the annual water yield, but caused sediment yield and total phosphorus losses to increase by 14%, and total nitrate-N losses to increase by 53%. Compared to the baseline scenario, phosphorus and sediment losses were increased by up to 51% and 71%, respectively, for 60% residue removal under a corn-corn-soy rotation. Switchgrass established on land steeper than 2% slope reduced sediment yield, phosphorus and nitrate-N losses by 73%, 39% and 9%, respectively, in comparison with the baseline scenario.

The results of this research in one of the most polluted watersheds in the Minnesota River Basin, the Le Sueur River Watershed, improve our understanding of the water quality effects of various biofuel crop production alternatives in the basin. Further study that considers the economic costs and benefits, as well as the impacts of biofuel crop production at the scale of the Minnesota River Basin on soil and water quality are recommended.

## Chapter 8 : General Conclusions

The Le Sueur River watershed (LRW), in the Minnesota River Basin was studied using the SWAT modeling approach. SWAT is physically based distributed model developed at the USDA-ARS to predict the impact of land management practices on water, sediment and agricultural chemical yields in large, complex watersheds with varying soils, land use and management conditions. The major objective of the research was to test applicability of the SWAT model to identify factors that influence the process of mobilization and transport of surface and sub-surface runoff, sediment and agricultural chemicals. Investigation was made to identify alternative management options that can mitigate the loss of contaminant from the watershed to the surrounding water resources.

The model was satisfactory for simulation of losses of upland sediment , nutrients (nitrate-nitrogen, phosphorus) and pesticides (atrazine, acetochlor and metolachlor). The spatial and temporal patterns of pollutants in the LRW were estimated and critical source areas identified. The model was used to evaluate the effectiveness of alternative best management practices (BMPs) at reducing pollutant loads. The LRW had an estimated annual loading of 1.02 kg TP/ha, 18 kg NO<sub>3</sub>-N/ha and 302,000 t/yr of sediment that contribute to water quality impairments in Lake Pepin and the Mississippi River. Alternative management practices were predicted to reduce upland sediment yield by up to 54%, nitrate-N losses by 22%, and phosphorus loadings by 64%.

Overall, the SWAT model was able to accurately simulate the hydrology and transport of chemical pollutants under the land use systems, climate, hydrologic and physiographic settings of South-Central Minnesota. The calibrated and validated model parameters can be applied to watersheds in the Minnesota River basin and other areas with similar land use, topography and climate. The model simulation results are expected to contribute to the future development of TMDLs in the LRW.

Further research is recommended in the following directions:

- Routing of flow and pollutants between HRUs and improvements in the stream channel degradation and sediment deposition routines

- In watersheds like the LRW, non-field sources of sediment such as erosion of stream banks, ravines and/or bluffs are more important than field sources. More research is required to include these aspects in the SWAT model.
- Targeted placement of BMPs like filter strips, grassed water ways, riparian buffer zones, wetlands, grassland or other land use within a given sub-watershed is not adequately treated by the model.
- The model need to have better routines for concentrated animal feeding operations
- The tile drainage routines in SWAT are based on empirical parameters related to timing of field drainage and do not explicitly account for the spacing and depth of tile drains
- Linking the model with socio-economic information would improve its application and importance as a management tool.

## **BIBLIOGRAPHY**

- Ahmadi, S.H., S. Amin, A. Reza Keshavarzi and N. Mirzamostafa. 2006. Simulating watershed outlet sediment concentration using the ANSWERS model by applying two sediment transport capacity equations. *Biosystems Engineering* 94:615-626.
- Alexander, R.B., P.J. Johnes, E.W. Boyer and R.A. Smith. 2002. A comparison of models for estimating the riverine export of nitrogen from large watersheds. *Biogeochemistry* 57:295-339.
- Arnold, J., J. Williams and D. Maidment. 1995. Continuous-time water and sediment-routing model for large basins. *J. Hydraul. Eng.* 121:171.
- Arnold, J., P. Allen, R. Muttiah and G. Bernhardt. 1995. Automated base flow separation and recession analysis techniques. *Ground Water* 33:1010-1018.
- Arnold, J., R. Srinivasan, R. Muttiah and J. Williams. 1998. Large area hydrologic modeling and assessment Part I: Model Development. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 34:73-89.
- Arnold, J., R. Srinivasan, R. Muttiah and P. Allen. 1999. Continental scale simulation of the hydrologic balance. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 35:1037-1051.
- Arnold, J., Williams, J., Srinivasan R. and King K. 1996. SWAT: Soil and water assessment tool. USDA-ARS, grassland. Soil and Water Research Laboratory, Temple, TX.
- Arora, K., S.K. Mickelson, J.L. Baker, D.P. Tierney and C.J. Peters. 1996. Herbicide retention by vegetative buffer strips from runoff under natural rainfall. *Trans. ASAE* 39:2155-2162.
- Aspelin, A. 2003. Pesticide usage in the United States: Trends during the 20th century. CIPM Technical Bulletin, 105. Center for Integrated Pest Management, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, North Carolina, USA.
- Bagnold, R. 1977. Bed load transport by natural rivers. *Water Resour. Res.* 13:303-312.

- Baker, J., K. Campbell, H. Johnson and J. Hanway. 1975. Nitrate, phosphorus, and sulfate in subsurface drainage water. *J. Environ. Qual.* 4:406-412.
- Baker, J.L. and H.P. Johnson. 1979. The effect of tillage systems on pesticides in runoff from small watersheds. *Trans. ASAE* 23:554-559.
- Baker, J.L., J.M. Laflen and H.P. Johnson. 1978. Effect of tillage systems on runoff losses of pesticides, a rainfall simulation study. *Trans. ASAE* 21:886-892.
- Barbash, J. and E. Resek. 1996. *Pesticides in ground water*. Ann Arbor Press, Chelsea, MI 48118.
- Battaglin, W.A. and D.A. Goolsby. 1999. Are shifts in herbicide use reflected in concentration changes in Midwestern rivers? *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 33:2917-2925.
- Beasley, D., L. Huggins and E. Monke. 1980. ANSWERS: A model for watershed planning. *Trans. ASAE* 23:938-944.
- Betson, R.P. 1964. What is watershed runoff. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 69:1541-1552.
- Bicknell, B., J. Imhoff, J. Kittle, A. Donigan and R. Johanson. 1997. Hydrologic simulation program: Fortran user's manual for version 11. Athens, GA, US environmental protection agency, ecosystems research division. Environmental Research Laboratory Report no EPA/600/R-97/080.
- Bicknell, B.R., J.C. Imhoff, J.L. Kittle Jr, A.S. Donigan Jr and R. Johanson. 1995. Hydrological simulation program-FORTRAN. user's manual for release 11. Environmental Research Laboratory, Office of Research and Development, US Environmental Protection Agency, Athens, Georgia.
- Bingner, R. and F. Theurer. 2001. AnnAGNPS: Estimating sediment yield by particle size for sheet & rill erosion. p. 1-7. *In* AnnAGNPS: Estimating sediment yield by particle size for sheet & rill erosion. Proceedings of the seventh interagency sedimentation conference, Reno, NV.

- Bingner, R., Garbrecht, J., Arnold J. and Srinivasan R. 1997. Effect of watershed subdivision on simulation runoff and fine sediment yield. *Trans. ASAE* 40:1329-1335.
- Birr, A. and D. Mulla. 2001. Evaluation of the phosphorus index in watersheds at the regional scale. *J. Environ. Qual.* 30:2018-2015.
- Borah, D. and M. Bera. 2003. Watershed-scale hydrologic and nonpoint-source pollution models: Review of mathematical bases. *Trans. ASAE* 46:1553-1566.
- Borah, D. and M. Bera. 2003. Watershed-scale hydrologic and nonpoint-source pollution models: Review of mathematical bases. *Trans. ASAE* 46:1553-1566.
- Borah, D., G. Yagow, A. Saleh, P. Barnes, W. Rosenthal, E. Krug and L. Hauck. 2006. Sediment and nutrient modeling for TMDL development and implementation. *Trans. ASAE* 49:967-986.
- Borah, D., M. Bera and R. Xia. 2004. Storm event flow and sediment simulations in agricultural watersheds using DWSM. *Trans. ASAE* 47:1539-1559.
- Borah, D., R. Xia and M. Bera. 2002. DWSM—A dynamic watershed simulation model. *Mathematical Model for Small Watershed Hydrology, WRP Edition, 2002.*
- Bouraoui, F., G. Vachaud, R. Haverkamp and B. Normand. 1997. A distributed physical approach for surface-subsurface water transport modeling in agricultural watersheds. *Journal of Hydrology* 203:79-92.
- Breve, M., R. Skaggs, J. Gilliam, J. Parsons, A. Mohammad, G. Chescheir and R. Evans. 1997. Field testing of DRAINMOD-N. *Trans. ASAE* 40:1077-1085.
- Broberg, O. and G. Persson. 1988. Particulate and dissolved phosphorus forms in freshwater: Composition and analysis. *Hydrobiologia* 170:61-90.
- Brown, L.C. and T.O. Barnwell. 1987. Enhanced stream water quality models QUAL2E and QUAL2E-UNCAS: Documentation and user model. EPA/600/3-87/007.

- Burgess, M.S., G.R. Mehuys, and C.A. Madramootoo. 2002. Nitrogen dynamics of decomposing corn residue components under three tillage systems. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 66:1350–1358.
- Carpenter, S., N. Caraco, D. Correll, R. Howarth, A. Sharpley and V. Smith. 1998. Nonpoint pollution of surface waters with phosphorus and nitrogen. *Ecol. Appl.* 8:559-568.
- Carsel, R., J. Imhoff, P. Hummel, J. Cheplick and A. Donigian Jr. 1998. PRZM-3, a model for predicting pesticide and nitrogen fate in the crop root and unsaturated soil zones: Users manual for release 3.0. National Exposure Research Laboratory, Office of Research and Development, US Environmental Protection Agency. Athens, GA, USA (1998).
- Charles W. 2009. Harvesting crop residue: What's it worth? USDA. NRCS. Iowa. Available at. <http://www.ia.nrcs.usda.gov/news/brochures/HarvestingResidue.html>.
- Chow VT, Maidment DR, Mays LW. 1988. *Applied hydrology*. McGraw-Hill, New York. pp 572.
- Chung, S., P. Gassman, D. Huggins, G. Randall and A. USDA. 2001. EPIC tile flow and nitrate loss predictions for three Minnesota cropping systems. *J. Environ. Qual.* 30:822-30..
- Clark, G., D. Goolsby and W. Battaglin. 1999. Seasonal and annual load of herbicides from the Mississippi River basin to the Gulf of Mexico. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 33:981-986.
- Clay, S.A. and W.C. Koskinen. 1990. Adsorption and desorption of atrazine, hydroxyatrazine, and s-glutathione atrazine on two soils. *Weed Sci.* 38:262-266. Colo.
- Constantinides, M. and J. Fownes. 1994. Nitrogen mineralization from leaves and litter of tropical plants: Relationship to nitrogen, lignin and soluble polyphenol concentrations. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry.* 26: 49–55.

- David, M.B., L.E. Gentry, D.A. Kovacic and K.M. Smith. 1997. Nitrogen balance in and export from an agricultural watershed. *J. Environ. Qual.* 26:1038-1048.
- David, M.B., S.J. Del Grosso, X. Hu, E.P. Marshall, G.F. McIsaac, W.J. Parton, C. Tonitto and M.A. Youssef. 2009. Modeling denitrification in a tile-drained, corn and soybean agroecosystem of illinois, USA. *Biogeochemistry* 93:7-30.
- Dawdy, D.R. and T. O'Donnell. 1965. Mathematical models of catchment behavior. American Society of Civil Engineers. Proceedings. 91:123-137.
- De Roo, A.P.J. and V. Jetten. 1999. Calibrating and validating the LISEM model for two data sets from the netherlands and south africa. *Catena* 37:477-493.
- DeBarry, P.A. and R.G. Quimpo. 1999. GIS modules and distributed models of the watershed: Report, Amer Society of Civil Engineers, Reston VA.
- Deliman, P., C.E. Ruiz, A.S. Donigian, T.H. Jobes, E.J. Nelson and C.T. Manwaring. 2001. Application of HSPF-AGCHEM module within the WMS for the Le Sueur basin. Water Quality Technical Notes Collection.
- Di Luzio, M., R. Srinivasan and J.G. Arnold. 2002. Integration of watershed tools and SWAT model into BASINS. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 38:1127-1142.
- Dickinson, W. and H. Whiteley. 1970. Watershed areas contributing to runoff. IASH-UNESCO Publ. Paris, France. No 96:12-26.
- Dillaha, T., R. Reneau, S. Mostaghimi and D. Lee. 1989. Vegetative filter strips for agricultural nonpoint source pollution control. *Trans. of the ASAE* 32(2) 513-519..
- Dinnes, D.L., D.L. Karlen, D.B. Jaynes, T.C. Kaspar, J.L. Hatfield, T.S. Colvin and C.A. Cambardella. 2002. Nitrogen management strategies to reduce nitrate leaching in tile-drained midwestern soils. *Agron. J.* 94:153-171.
- Donigian, A. and H. Davis. 1978. User's manual for agricultural runoff management(ARM) model. Available from the National Technical Information Service, Springfield VA 22161 as PB-286 366, Price Codes: A 08 in Paper Copy, A 01 in Microfiche. Report.

- Donner, S.D. and C.J. Kucharik. 2008. Corn-based ethanol production compromises goal of reducing nitrogen export by the Mississippi river. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* 105:4513-4518.
- Dust, M., N. Baran, G. Errera, J. Hutson, C. Mouvet, H. Schäfer, H. Vereecken and A. Walker. 2000. Simulation of water and solute transport in field soils with the LEACHP model. *Agric. Water Manage.* 44:225-245.
- Elliot, W.J., Foster, G.R. and Elliot, A.V. 1994. 1994. Soil erosion: Processes, impacts and prediction, in R. Lal and F.J. pierce (eds), soil management for sustainability, soil and water conservation society, iowa, pp 25-34. p. 25-34.
- Engstrom, D.R., J.E. Almendinger and J.A. Wolin. 2009. Historical changes in sediment and phosphorus loading to the upper mississippi river: Mass-balance reconstructions from the sediments of lake pepin. *J. Paleolimnol.* 41:563-588.
- Ewen, J., G. Parkin and P.E. O'Connell. 2000. SHETRAN: Distributed river basin flow and transport modeling system. *J. Hydrol. Eng.* 5:250-258.
- Feyereisen, G.W., G.R. Sands, B.N. Wilson, J.S. Strock and P.M. Porter. 2005. A simple model to estimate artificial subsurface drainage losses. *In A simple model to estimate artificial subsurface drainage losses. Proceedings of the American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers International (ASABE), 2005.*
- Galloway, J.N. 1998. The global nitrogen cycle: Changes and consequences. *Environmental Pollution* 102:15-24.
- Galloway, J.N., J.D. Aber, J.W. Erisman, S.P. Seitzinger, R.W. Howarth, E.B. Cowling and B.J. Cosby. 2003. The nitrogen cascade. *Bioscience* 53:341-356.
- Gassman, P.W., M.R. Reyes, C.H. Green and J.G. Arnold. 2007. The soil and water assessment tool: Historical development, applications, and future research directions. *Trans.ASABE* 50:1211-1250.
- Gast, R., W. Nelson and G. Randall. 1978. Nitrate accumulation in soils and loss in tile drainage following nitrogen applications to continuous corn. *J. Environ. Qual.* 7:258.

- Gburek, W., C. Drungil, M. Srinivasan, B. Needelman and D. Woodward. 2002. Variable-source-area controls on phosphorus transport: Bridging the gap between research and design. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* 57:534-543.
- Gessler, P., I. Moore, N. McKenzie and P. Ryan. 1995. Soil-landscape modelling and spatial prediction of soil attributes. *Int. J. Geogr. Inf. Sci.* 9:421-432.
- Gilliom, R.J. 1984. Pesticides in rivers of the United States. In: National Water Summary 1984 – Hydrologic Events Selected Water-Quality Trends and Ground-Water Resources. U.S. Geol. Surv. Water-Supply Paper 2275, p. 85–92.
- Gilliom, R.J., J.E. Barbash, C.G. Crawford, P.A. Hamilton, J.D. Martin, N. Nakagaki, L.H. Nowell, J.C. Scott, P.E. Stackelberg and G.P. Thelin. 2006. Pesticides in the nation's streams and ground water, 1992-2001. Sacramento (CA): US Geological Survey Circular 1291.172.p.
- Gitau, M., T. Veith, W. Gburek and A. USDA. 2004. Farm-level optimization of BMP placement for cost-effective pollution reduction. *Trans. ASAE* 47:1923-1931.
- Glassner, D., J. Hettenhaus and T. Schechinger. 1998. Corn stover collection project. *BioEnergy'98—Expanding bioenergy partnerships: Proceedings.* p. 1100-1110.
- Goolsby, D., E. Thurman and D. Kolpin. 1991. Geographic and temporal distribution of herbicides in surface waters of the upper midwestern United States, 1989–90. p. 15. *In* Geographic and temporal distribution of herbicides in surface waters of the upper midwestern United States, 1989–90. US Geological Survey toxic substances hydrology Program—Proceedings of the technical meeting, Monterey, California.
- Goolsby, D.A., W.A. Battaglin, B.T. Aulenbach and R.P. Hooper. 2000. Nitrogen flux and sources in the mississippi river basin. *Science of the Total Environment*, the 248:75-86.
- Goolsby, D.A., W.A. Battaglin, G.B. Lawrence, R.S. Artz, B.T. Aulenbach, R.P. Hooper, D.R. Keeney and G.J. Stensland. 1999. Flux and sources of nutrients in the Mississippi-Atchafalaya river basin. Task Group 3 Report, Gulf of Mexico

- Hypoxia Assessment. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). Silver Spring, Maryland.
- Goss, D.W. 1992. Screening procedure for soils and pesticides for potential water quality impacts. *Weed Technol.* 6:701-708.
- Gowda, P., Dalzell, B.J., Mulla, D.J. 2007. Model based nitrate TMDLs for two agricultural watersheds of Southeastern Minnesota. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association.* 43::254-263.
- Graham, R., R. Nelson, J. Sheehan, R. Perlack and L. Wright. 2007. Current and potential US corn stover supplies. *Agron. J.* 99:1-11.
- Graham, R.L., E. Lichtenberg, V.O. Roningen, H. Shapouri and M.E. Walsh. 1995. The economics of biomass production in the united states. *In* The economics of biomass production in the united states. Proceedings of the second biomass conference of the americas: Energy, environment, agriculture, and industry, 1995.
- Green, W.H. and G. Ampt. 1911. Studies on soil physics: 1. The flow of air and water through soils. *J. Agric. Sci.* 4:1-24.
- Grismer, M., M. Orang, R. Snyder and R. Matyac. 2002. Pan evaporation to reference evapotranspiration conversion methods. *J. Irrig. Drain. Eng.* 128:180-184.
- Gutteridge Haskins and Davey (1991). CSIRO TOPOG home page, <http://www.clw.csiro.au/topog/intro/intro.html> .
- Haith, D.A. and L.L. Shoemaker. 1987. Generalized watershed loading functions for stream flow nutrients. *Water Resour Bull* 23:471-478.
- Hanley, N., R. Faichney, A. Munro and J.S. Shortle. 1998. Economic and environmental modelling for pollution control in an estuary. *J. Environ. Manage.* 52:211-225.
- Harmon, R.S. and W.W. Doe. 2001. Landscape erosion and evolution modeling. Plenum Pub Corp New York, USA.

- Hasegawa, H., J.M. Labavitch, A.M. McGuire, D.C. Bryant and R.F. Denison. 1999. Testing CERES model predictions of N release from legume cover crop residue. *Field Crops Res.* 63:255-267.
- Hassan, Q.K., P.A.B. Charles, F.R. Meng and R.M. Cox. 2007. A wetness index using terrain-corrected surface temperature and normalized difference vegetation index derived from standard MODIS products: An evaluation of its use in a humid forest-dominated region of eastern Canada. *Sensors* 7:2028-2048.
- Holt, R. 1979. Crop residue, soil erosion, and plant nutrient relationships. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* 34:96-98.
- Holvoet, K., A. van Griensven, P. Seuntjens and P. Vanrolleghem. 2005. Sensitivity analysis for hydrology and pesticide supply towards the river in SWAT. *Phys. Chem. Earth* 30:518-526.
- Holvoet, K.M.A., P. Seuntjens and P.A. Vanrolleghem. 2007. Monitoring and modeling pesticide fate in surface waters at the catchment scale. *Ecol. Model.* 209:53-64.
- Howarth, R.W., E.W. Boyer, W.J. Pabich and J.N. Galloway. 2002. Nitrogen use in the United States from 1961–2000 and potential future trends. *AMBIO: A Journal of the Human Environment* 31:88-96.
- Im, S., K. Brannan, S. Mostaghimi and J. Cho. 2003. A comparison of SWAT and HSPF models for simulating hydrologic and water quality responses from an urbanizing watershed. *In* A comparison of SWAT and HSPF models for simulating hydrologic and water quality responses from an urbanizing watershed. 2003 ASAE annual international meeting, American Society of Agricultural Engineers, Las Vegas, Nevada.
- Irmak, S., T. Howell, R. Allen, J. Payero, D. Martin and A. USDA. 2005. Standardized ASCE Penman-Monteith: impact of sum-of-hourly vs. 24-hour time step computations at reference weather station sites. *Trans. ASAE* 48(3):1063-1077.
- Jain, M.K. and U.C. Kothyari. 2000. Estimation of soil erosion and sediment yield using GIS. *Hydrol Sci J* 45:771-786.

- Jakeman, A.J., T.R. Green, S.G. Beavis, L. Zhang, C.R. Dietrich and P.F. Crapper. 1999. Modelling upland and instream erosion, sediment and phosphorus transport in a large catchment. *Hydrol. Process.* 13:745-752.
- Jame, Y. and H. Cutforth. 1996. Crop growth models for decision support systems. *Canadian Journal of Plant Science* 76:9-20.
- James, W.F. and C.E. Larson. 2008. Phosphorus dynamics and loading in the turbid Minnesota river (USA): Controls and recycling potential. *Biogeochemistry* 90:75-92.
- Jaynes, D., T. Colvin, D. Karlen, C. Cambardella and D. Meek. 2001. Nitrate loss in subsurface drainage as affected by nitrogen fertilizer rate. *Journal of Environmental Quality* 30:1305-1314 (2001)
- Jha, M., P.W. Gassman, S. Secchi, R. Gu and J. Arnold. 2004. Effect of watershed subdivision on SWAT flow, sediment, and nutrient predictions. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 40:811-825.
- Johanson, R., J. Imhoff and H. Davis. 1980. Users Manual for the Hydrologic Simulation Program—Fortran (HSPF) Version no.5.0.
- Johanson, R.C., J.C. Imhoff, J.L. Kittle Jr and A. Donigian Jr. 1984. Hydrologic simulation program-FORTRAN (HSPF) User's manual for release 8. Environmental Research Laboratory, Athens, Georgia 3-84.
- Jones, C., A. Sharpley, J. Williams and A. USDA. 1984. A simplified soil and plant phosphorus model. III. testing. *Soil Sci Soc Am J* 48:810-813.
- Jones, C.A., J. Kiniry and P. Dyke. 1986. CERES-maize: A simulation model of maize growth and development. Texas A&M University Press, College Station, Texas.
- Julien, P.Y. 1998. Erosion and sedimentation. Cambridge Univ Pr, New York..
- Justić, D., N.N. Rabalais, R.E. Turner and Q. Dortch. 1995. Changes in nutrient structure of river-dominated coastal waters: Stoichiometric nutrient balance and its consequences. *Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci.* 40:339-356.

- Kalkhoff, S.J., K.E. Lee, S.D. Porter, P.J. Terrio and E.M. Thurman. 2003. Herbicides and herbicide degradation products in upper midwest agricultural streams during August base-flow conditions. *J. Environ. Qual.* 32:1025-1035.
- Kannan, N., S. White and M. Whelan. 2007. Predicting diffuse-source transfers of surfactants to surface waters using SWAT. *Chemosphere* 66:1336-1345.
- Kannan, N., S.M. White, F. Worrall and M.J. Whelan. 2006. Pesticide modelling for a small catchment using SWAT-2000. *J. Environ. Sci. Health B.* 41:1049-1070.
- Khan, S., R. Mulvaney and R. Hoefl. 2001. A simple soil test for detecting sites that are nonresponsive to nitrogen fertilization. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 65:1751-1760.
- Kiniry, J., J. Williams, P. Gassmann and P. Debaeke. 1992. General, process-oriented model for two competing plant species. *Trans. ASAE* 35:801-810.
- Kiniry, J.R., J.R. Williams, R.L. Vanderlip, J.D. Atwood, D.C. Reicosky, J. Mulliken, W.J. Cox, H.J. Mascagni Jr, S.E. Hollinger and W.J. Wiebold. 1997. Evaluation of two maize models for nine US locations. *Agron. J.* 89:421-426.
- Kinnell, P. I. A. (2005) Why the universal soil loss equation and the revised version of it do not predict event erosion well. *Hydrol. Processes*, 19, 851–854.
- Kirsch, K., A. Kirsch and J. Arnold. 2002. Predicting sediment and phosphorus loads in the rock river basin using SWAT. *ASAE.* 45: 1757–1769
- Knisel, W. 1993. GLEAMS, groundwater loading effects of agricultural management systems, version 2.1. User's Manual. UGA-CPES-BAED Pub. No. 5. Washington, D.C.
- Knisel, W. and F. Davis. 2000. GLEAMS version 3.0 user manual. US Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service, Southeast Watershed Research Laboratory, Tifton, GA.202 pp.
- Knisel, W.G. 1980. CREAMS: A field scale model for chemicals, runoff, and erosion from agricultural management systems [USA]. United States.Dept.of Agriculture.Conservation Research Report (USA).

- Knisel, W.G. 1980. CREAMS: a field scale model for Chemicals, Runoff and Erosion from Agricultural Management Systems, Conservation Research Report No. 26, USDA, Washington, DC.
- Kolpin, D., M. Burkart and D. Goolsby. 1999. Nitrate in groundwater of the Midwestern United States: A regional investigation on relations to land use and soil properties. IAHS Publication 111-116.
- Kolpin, D.W., B.K. Nations, D.A. Goolsby and E.M. Thurman. 1996. Acetochlor in the hydrologic system in the midwestern United States, 1994. Environ. Sci. Technol. 30:1459-1464.
- Kolpin, D.W., E.M. Thurman and D.A. Goolsby. 1995. Occurrence of selected pesticides and their metabolites in near-surface aquifers of the midwestern United States. Environ. Sci. Technol. 30:335-340.
- Kronvang, B., M. Bechmann, M.L. Pedersen and N. Flynn. 2003. Phosphorus dynamics and export in streams draining micro-catchments: Development of empirical models. Journal of Plant Nutrition and Soil Science 166:469-474.
- Krug, E. and D. Winstanley. 2002. The need for comprehensive and consistent treatment of the nitrogen cycle in nitrogen cycling and mass balance studies: I. terrestrial nitrogen cycle. Science of the Total Environment, the 293:1-29.
- Krysanova, V. and J.G. Arnold. 2008. Advances in ecohydrological modelling with SWAT-a review. Hydrol. Sci. J. /J. Sci. Hydrol. 53:939-947.
- Krysanova, V., Wechsung, F., Arnold, J., Srinivasan, R., and Williams, J.: SWIM, User manual, PIK-Report, H. 69, Potsdam Institut für Klimafolgenforschung, 2000.
- Kumar, A., R. Kanwar and L. Ahuja. 1998. Evaluation of preferential flow component of RZWQM in simulating water and atrazine transport to subsurface drains. Trans. ASAE 41:627-637.
- Laflen, J. and T. Colvin. 1981. Effect of crop residue on soil loss from continuous row cropping. Trans. ASAE 24:605-609..

- Laflen, J., L. Lane, G. Foster and A. USDA. 1991. WEPP: A new generation of erosion prediction technology. *J. Soil and Water Conserv.* 46:30-34.
- Lakes, G. 2007. The potential impacts of increased corn production for ethanol in the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence River Region. Great Lakes Commission for the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Great Lakes & Ohio River Division: Cincinnati, OH, 2007; Available at <http://www.glc.org/tributary/pubs/documents/EthanolPaper121807FINAL.pdf>.
- Larson, S.J., P.D. Capel and M.S. Majewski. 1997. Pesticides in surface waters: Distribution, trends, and governing factors. Ann Arbor Press, Inc., Chelsea, Michigan, 373 pp.
- Leavesley, G., R. Lichty, B. Troutman and L. Saindon. 1983. Precipitation-runoff modeling system: User's manual. Available from Books and Open File Report Section, USGS Box 25425, Denver, Co 80225. USGS Water Resources Investigations Report 83-4238, 1983. 207 p, 54 Fig, 15 Tab, 51 Ref, 8 Attach.
- Lemunyon, J. and T.C. Daniel. 1998. Phosphorus management for water quality protection: A national effort. *In: JT Sims (ed), Soil Testing for Phosphorus: Environmental Uses and Implications.* S Coop Ext Series Bull No 389. pp 1–4.
- Lemus, R., E.C. Brummer, K.J. Moore, N.E. Molstad, C.L. Burras and M.F. Barker. 2002. Biomass yield and quality of 20 switchgrass populations in southern Iowa, USA. *Biomass Bioenergy* 23:433-442.
- Leonard, R., W. Knisel and D. Still. 1987. GLEAMS: Groundwater loading effects of agricultural management systems. *Transactions of the ASAS*, 30:1403-1418.
- Lim, K.J. and B.A. Engel,. 2004. WHAT: Web-based hydrograph analysis tool. available at <http://pasture.ecn.purdue.edu/~what>.
- Lim, K.J., B.A. Engel, Z. Tang, J. Choi, K.S. Kim, S. Muthukrishnan and D. Tripathy. 2005a. Automated Web GIS Based Hydrograph Analysis Tool, WHAT . *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 41:1407-1416.

- Linden, D., C. Clapp and R. Dowdy. 2000. Long-term corn grain and stover yields as a function of tillage and residue removal in East Central Minnesota. *Soil & Tillage Research* 56:167-174.
- Littleboy, M., D. Silburn, D. Freebairn, D. Woodruff, G. Hammer and J. Leslie. 1992. Impact of soil erosion on production in cropping systems. I. development and validation of a simulation model. *Aust. J. Soil Res.* 30:757-757.
- Luzio, M., R. Srinivasab and J. Arnold. 2001. ArcView interface for SWAT 2000, user's guide. Blackland Research Center Texas Agricultural Experiment Station. USDA. Temple, TX.
- L'vovich, M. 1979. World water resources and their future. American Geophysical Union. Washington, D.C , (33921), pp. 415.
- Ma, Q., A. Smith, J. Hook, R. Smith and D. Bridges. 1999. Water runoff and pesticide transport from a golf course fairway: Observations vs. opus model simulations. *J. Environ. Qual.* 28:1463-1473.
- Magner, J., G. Payne and L. Steffen. 2004. Drainage effects on stream nitrate-N and hydrology in south-central minnesota (USA). *Environ. Monit. Assess.* 91:183-198.
- Malcolm, S. and M. Aillery. 2009. Growing crops for biofuels has spillover effects. *Amber Waves* 7:10-15.
- Mallarino, A., B. Stewart, J. Baker, J. Downing and J. Sawyer. 2002. Phosphorus indexing for cropland: Overview and basic concepts of the Iowa phosphorus index. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* 57:440-447.
- Mann, L., V. Tolbert and J. Cushman. 2002. Potential environmental effects of corn (zea mays L.) stover removal with emphasis on soil organic matter and erosion. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 89:149-166.
- McIsaac, G.F., M.B. David, G.Z. Gertner and D.A. Goolsby. 2001. Eutrophication: Nitrate flux in the Mississippi river. *Nature* 414:166-167.

- McLaughlin, S., J. Bouton, D. Bransby, B. Conger, W. Ocumpaugh, D. Parrish, C. Taliaferro, K. Vogel and S. Wullschleger. 1999. Developing switchgrass as a bioenergy crop. In: J.J. Janick, Editor, Proceedings of the fourth national new crops symposium, ASHS Press, Alexandria, VA (1999), pp. 282–299.
- Mehta, V.K., A.M. Marrone, J. Boll, P. Gérard-Marchant and T.S. Steenhuis. 2003. Simple estimation of prevalence of Hortonian flow in New York City watersheds. *J. Hydrol. Eng.* 8:214-218.
- Mehta, V.K., M.T. Walter, E.S. Brooks, T.S. Steenhuis, M.F. Walter, M. Johnson, J. Boll and D. Thongs. 2004. Application of SMR to modeling watersheds in the Catskill mountains. *Environmental Modeling and Assessment* 9:77-89.
- Merritt, W., R. Letcher and A. Jakeman. 2003. A review of erosion and sediment transport models. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 18:761-799.
- Merritt, W., R. Letcher and A. Jakeman. 2003. A review of erosion and sediment transport models. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 18:761-799.
- Migliaccio, K.W. and I. Chaubey. 2008. Spatial distributions and stochastic parameter influences on SWAT flow and sediment predictions. *J. Hydrol. Eng.* 13:258.
- Minnesota Department of Agriculture (MDA). 2009. 2007 pesticide usage on four major crops in Minnesota. USDA: NASS, Minnesota & North Dakota field offices. St. Paul, MN.
- Minnesota River Basin Data Center MRBDC. 2004. Pesticides. online. <http://mrbdc.mnsu.edu/mnbasin/wq/pesticides.html>. Water Resources Center, Minnesota State University, Mankato.
- Minnesota State University. October, 2000. Le Sueur river major watershed diagnostic report. Rep. 951-1-194-07. Minnesota State University, Mankato, Mankato, MN.
- Mitchell, G., R. Griggs, V. Benson and J. Williams. 1996. The EPIC model: Environmental policy integrated climate. User's guide. (Formerly Erosion Productivity Impact Calculator)." Texas Agricultural Experiment Station, Blackland Research Center, Temple, TX.

- Moldenhauer, W., W. Burrows and D. Swartzendruber. 1961. Influence of rainstorm characteristics on infiltration measurements. In International Congress of Soil Science, Madison, Wisconsin; 426-432.
- Monsi, M. and T. Saeki. 1953. Über den lichtfactor in den pflanzengesellschaften und seine bedeutung für die stoffproduktion. *Jpn.J.Bot.* 14:22-52.
- Monteith, J. and C. Moss. 1977. Climate and the efficiency of crop production in Britain [and discussion]. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series B, Biological Sciences* 281:277-294.
- Moody, D. 1990. Groundwater contamination in the United States. *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation* 45(2):170-179.
- Moore, I., P. Gessler, G. Nielsen and G. Peterson. 1993. Soil attribute prediction using terrain analysis. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 57:443-443.
- Morgan, R., J. Quinton, R. Smith, G. Govers, J. Poesen, K. Auerswald, G. Chisci, D. Torri and M. Styczen. 1998. The European soil erosion model (EUROSEM): A dynamic approach for predicting sediment transport from fields and small catchments. *Earth Surf. Process. Landforms* 23:527-544.
- MPCA, 2. 2009. Minnesota's impaired waters and TMDLs: Maps of impaired waters. <http://www.pca.state.mn.us/water/tmdl/index.html>.
- MPCA. 2007. Impaired waters assessments for pesticides and draft 2008 303(d) list: Update. wq-iw1-14. St. Paul, MN.
- Muleta, M.K. and J.W. Nicklow. 2005. Sensitivity and uncertainty analysis coupled with automatic calibration for a distributed watershed model. *Journal of Hydrology* 306:127-145.
- Mulla, D. 1998. Phosphorus in surface waters: The Minnesota river case study. Potash & Phosphate Institute, *Better Crops with Plant Food* 1:8-11.

- Mulla, D.J. and A.C. Sekely. 2009. Historical trends affecting accumulation of sediment and phosphorus in Lake Pepin, upper Mississippi river, USA. *J. Paleolimnol.* 41:589-602.
- Mulla, D.J., P.H. Gowda, A.S. Birr, and B.J. Dalzell. 2003. In: Pachepsky, Y.; Radcliffe, D.E.; Selim, H.M.E. *Scaling Methods in Soil Physics.* p 295-307. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
- Munoz-Carpena, R., J.E. Parsons and J.W. Gilliam. 1999. Modeling hydrology and sediment transport in vegetative filter strips. *Journal of Hydrology* 214:111-129.
- Muttiah, R.S. and R.A. Wurbs. 2002. Scale-dependent soil and climate variability effects on watershed water balance of the SWAT model. *Journal of Hydrology* 256:264-285.
- Nash, J.E. and Sutcliffe, J.V. 1970. River flow forecasting through conceptual models; part 1—A discussion of principles. *J. Hydrol.* **10** (3): 282–290.
- Nearing, M. and Lane L.J. and Lopes V.L. (1994). 1994. Modeling soil erosion. p. 127-156. In *Soil erosion research methods.* second ed. Soil and Water Conservation Society. pp. 127-156..
- Nearing, M., G. Foster, L. Lane, S. Finkner and A. USDA. 1989. A process-based soil erosion model for USDA-water erosion prediction project technology. *Trans. ASAE*, 32:1587–1593.
- Needelman, B.A., Gburek, W.J., Petersen, G.W., Sharpley, A.N., Kleinman, P.J.A., 2004. Surface runoff along two agricultural hillslopes with contrasting soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 68, 914 – 923.
- Neitsch, S., J. Arnold, J. Kiniry and J. Williams. 2005. Soil and water assessment tool theoretical documentation, version 2005. Temple, TX. USDA Agricultural Research Service and Texas A&M Blackland Research Center. College Station, TX.

- Neitsch, S., J. Arnold, J. Kiniry and J. Williams. 2005a. Soil and water assessment tool theoretical documentation, version 2005. Temple, TX. USDA Agricultural Research Service and Texas A&M Blackland Research Center.
- Neitsch, S., J. Arnold, J. Kiniry and J. Williams. 2005b. Soil and water assessment tool theoretical documentation, version 2005. Agricultural Research Service, Grassland, Soil and Water Research Laboratory and Texas Agricultural Experiment Station, Blackland Research Center, Temple, TX.
- Neitsch, S.L., Arnold, J.G. and Srinivasan, R. 2002 Pesticide fate and transport predicted by the soil and water assessment tool (SWAT). Atrazine, Metolachlor and Trifluralin in the Sugar Creek Watershed: BRC Report 2002-03; Blackland Research and Extension Center: Temple, TX..
- Neitsch, S.L., Arnold, J.G. Kiniry, J.R., Srinivasan, R. and Williams J.R. 2002. Soil and water assessment tool User's manual version 2000. Rep. GSWRL Report 02-02, BRC Report 02- 06. Texas Water Resources Institute TR-192, College Station, TX.
- Neitsch, S.L., J.G. Arnold, J.R. Kiniry, R. Srinivasan, and J.R. Williams. 2002. Soil and water assessment tool User's manual version 2000. Rep. GSWRL Report 02-02, BRC Report 02- 06. Texas Water Resources Institute TR-192, College Station, TX.
- Neitsch, S.L., J.G. Arnold, J.R. Kiniry, R. Srinivasan, and J.R. Williams. 2002. Soil and water assessment tool User's manual version 2000. Rep. GSWRL Report 02-02, BRC Report 02- 06. Texas Water Resources Institute TR-192, College Station, TX.
- Nichols, M., K. Renard and A. USDA. 2003. Sediment yield from semiarid watersheds. p. 27-30. In Sediment yield from semiarid watersheds. First interagency conference on research in the watersheds, october, 2003.

- Oglesby, K.A. and J.H. Fownes. 1992. Effects of chemical composition on nitrogen mineralization from green manures of seven tropical leguminous trees. *Plant Soil* 143:127-132.
- O'Leary, M., G. Rehm and M. Schmitt. 1990. Understanding nitrogen in soils. AG-FO-3770. University of Minnesota Ext. Serv., St Paul, MN
- Ouyang, D. and J. Bartholic. 1997. Predicting sediment delivery ratio in saginaw bay watershed. In Predicting sediment delivery ratio in saginaw bay watershed. The 22nd national association of environmental professionals conference proceedings, orlando, USA, 1997.
- Payne, G. 1994. Sources and transport of sediment, nutrients, and oxygen-demanding substances in the minnesota river basin, 1989-92. Water-Resources Investigations Report (USA).
- Perlack, R.D., L.L. Wright, A.F. Turhollow, R.L. Graham, B.J. Stokes and D.C. Erbach. 2005. Biomass as feedstock for a bioenergy and bioproducts industry: The technical feasibility of a billion-ton annual supply. (Tech. Rep. ORNL/TM-2006/66, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN, 2005). Also available at [http://feedstockreview.ornl.gov/pdf/billion\\_ton\\_vision.pdf](http://feedstockreview.ornl.gov/pdf/billion_ton_vision.pdf).
- Pierson, S., M. Cabrera, G. Evanylo, P. Schroeder, D. Radcliffe, H. Kuykendall, V. Benson, J. Williams, C. Hoveland and M. McCann. 2001. Phosphorus losses from grasslands fertilized with broiler litter: EPIC simulations. *J. Environ. Qual.* 30:1790-1795.
- Price, N.C. 2006. The State of food and agriculture. FAO. Rome. Italy.
- Prosser, I., B. Young, P. Rustomji, A. Hughes and C. Moran. 2001. A model of river sediment budgets as an element of river health assessment. p. 10–13. In A model of river sediment budgets as an element of river health assessment. Proceedings of the international congress on modelling and simulation (MODSIM'2001), december, 2001.

- Pye, V. and R. Patrick. 1983. Ground water contamination in the United States. *Science* 221:713-718.
- Rabalais, N.N., R.E. Turner, D. Justic, Q. Dortch, W.J. Wiseman and B.K. Sen Gupta. 1996. Nutrient changes in the Mississippi river and system responses on the adjacent continental shelf. *Estuaries and Coasts* 19:386-407.
- Radcliffe, D., J. Freer and O. Schoumans. 2009. Diffuse phosphorus models in the United States and Europe: Their usages, scales, and uncertainties. *J. Environ. Qual.* 38:1956-1967.
- Radcliffe, D.E. and M.L. Cabrera. 2006. *Modeling phosphorus in the environment.* CRC, New York.
- Randall, G. and M. Schmitt. 1993. Best management practices for nitrogen use in South-Central Minnesota. AG-FO-6127. Univ. of Minnesota Ext. Serv., St Paul, MN
- Randall, G. and T. Iragavarapu. 1995. Impact of long-term tillage systems for continuous corn on nitrate leaching to tile drainage. *J. Environ. Qual.* 24:360-366.
- Randall, G., D. Mulla, G. Rehm, L. Busman, J. Lamb and M. Schmitt. 1997. Phosphorus transport and availability in surface waters. Saint Paul MN: University of Minnesota, Minnesota Extension Service FO-6796-B.
- Rebich, R., R. Coupe and E. Thurman. 2004. Herbicide concentrations in the Mississippi River Basin—The importance of chloroacetanilide herbicide degradates. *Science of the Total Environment*, 321:189-199.
- Redfearn, D., K. Moore, K. Vogel, S. Waller, R. Mitchell and A. USDA. 1997. Canopy architecture and morphology of switchgrass populations differing in forage yield. *Agron. J.* 89:262–269.
- Reed-Andersen, T., S.R. Carpenter and R.C. Lathrop. 2000. Phosphorus flow in a watershed-lake ecosystem. *Ecosystems* 3:561-573.

- Refsgaard, J., B. Storm and V. Singh. 1995. MIKE SHE. Computer Models of Watershed Hydrology 1:809-846.
- Refsgaard, J.C. 1997. Parameterisation, calibration and validation of distributed hydrological models. Journal of Hydrology 198:69-97.
- Rehm, G., M. Schmitt, G. Randall, J. Lamb and R. Eliason. 2000. Fertilizing corn in Minnesota. FO-3790. Univ. of Minnesota Ext. Serv., St. Paul, MN.
- Renard, K.G., G. Foster, G. Weesies, D. McCool and D. Yoder. 1997. Predicting soil erosion by water: A guide to conservation planning with the revised universal soil loss equation (RUSLE). United States Department of Agriculture (USDA). Washington, DC, USA.
- Renewable Fuels Association (RFA). 2009. Biorefinery locations. Available at <http://www.ethanolrfa.org/industry/locations/>
- Rice, P.J., P.J. Rice, E.L. Arthur and A.C. Barefoot. 2007. Advances in pesticide environmental fate and exposure assessments. J. Agric. Food Chem. 55:5367-5376.
- Rose, C., K. Coughlan, L. Ciesiolka and B. Fentie. 1997. Program GUEST (Griffith University Erosion System Template), a New Soil Conservation Methodology and Application to Cropping Systems in Tropical Steeplands.
- Santhi, C., J. Arnold, J. Williams, W. Dugas, R. Srinivasan and L. Hauck. 2001. Validation of the SWAT MODEL on large river water basin with point and non point sources. J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc. 37:1169-1188.
- Santhi, C., J. Arnold, J. Williams, W. Dugas, R. Srinivasan and L. Hauck. 2001. validation of the SWAT model on a large river basin with point and nonpoint sources. J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc. 37:1169-1188.
- Schmitt, M., J. Schmidt, G. Randall, J. Lamb, J. Orf and H. Gollany. 2001. Effect of manure on accumulation of dry matter, nitrogen, and phosphorus by soybean. Commun. Soil Sci. Plant Anal. 32:1931-1941.

- Scribner, E., D. Goolsby, E. Thurman and W. Battaglin. 1998. A reconnaissance for selected herbicides, metabolites, and nutrients in streams of nine midwestern states, 1994–95. US Geological Survey Open-File Report 98:181, 44 p.
- Sekely, A., D. Mulla and D. Bauer. 2002. Streambank slumping and its contribution to the phosphorus and suspended sediment loads of the blue earth river, Minnesota. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* 57:243-249.
- Seligman, N. and H. Keulen. 1981. PAPRAN: A simulation model of annual pasture production limited by rainfall and nitrogen. *Simulation*.
- Senjem, N. 1997. Minnesota river basin information document. Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, St.Paul 261 p.
- Senjem, N., J. Moncrief, G. Randall and S. Evans. 1996. Sediment problems and solutions for the minnesota river. Minnesota Extension Service FO-6671-C.St.Paul, MN.
- Sharpley, A., B. Foy, P. Withers and A. USDA. 2000. Practical and innovative measures for the control of agricultural phosphorus losses to water: An overview. *J Environ Qual* 29:1-9
- Sharpley, A., C. Jones, C. Gray, C. Cole and A. USDA. 1984. A simplified soil and plant phosphorus model. II. prediction of labile, organic, and sorbed phosphorus. *Soil Sci Soc Am J* 48:805-809.
- Sharpley, A., P. Kleinman, R. McDowell, M. Gitau, R. Bryant and A. USDA. 2002. Modeling phosphorus transport in agricultural watersheds: Processes and possibilities. *J. Environ. Qual.* 57:425-439.
- Sharpley, A., S. Chapra, R. Wedepohl, J. Sims, T. Daniel, K. Reddy and A. USDA. 1994. Managing agricultural phosphorus for protection of surface waters: Issues and options. *J. Environ. Qual.* 23:437-451.

- Sharpley, A.N. and A. USDA. 2003. Agricultural phosphorus and eutrophication. USDA-ARS, Pasture Systems & Watershed Management Research Unit, Curtin Road, University Park, PA.
- Sherman, L.K. 1932. Streamflow from rainfall by unit-graph method. *Engineering News-Record* 108(14):501-506.
- Shigaki, F., A. Sharpley and L.I. Prochnow. 2006. Animal-based agriculture, phosphorus management and water quality in Brazil: Options for the future. *Scientia Agricola* 63:194-209.
- Shirmohammadi, A., I. Chaubey, R. Harmel, D. Bosch, R. Muñoz-Carpena, C. Dharmasri, A. Sexton, M. Arabi, M. Wolfe and J. Frankenberger. 2006. Uncertainty in TMDL models. *Trans. ASAE* 49:1033-1049.
- Shoemaker, L., T. Dai, J. Koenig and M. Hantush. 2005. TMDL model evaluation and research needs. EPA 600-R-05-149. Cincinnati, Ohio: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, National Risk Management Research Laboratory.
- Siimes, K. and J. Kaemaeri. 2003. A review of available pesticide leaching models: Selection of models for simulation of herbicide fate in Finnish sugar beet cultivation. *Boreal Environ. Res.* 8:31-51.
- Simon, A. and M. Rinaldi. 2006. Disturbance, stream incision, and channel evolution: The roles of excess transport capacity and boundary materials in controlling channel response. *Geomorphology* 79:361-383.
- Sims, J., R. Simard and B. Joern. 1998. Phosphorus loss in agricultural drainage: Historical perspective and current research. *J. Environ. Qual.* 27:277-293.
- Singh, P., R. Kanwar, K. Johnsen and L. Ahuja. 1996. Calibration and evaluation of subsurface drainage component of RZWQM V. 2.5. *J. Environ. Qual.* 25:56-63.
- Singh, V. 1995a. Computer models of watershed hydrology. Water Resources Publications. Highlands Ranch, Colo.

- Singh, V. P., and D. K. Frevert (2002), *Mathematical Models of Large Watershed Hydrology*, Water Resour. Publ., 891 pp., Highlands Ranch,
- Singh, V.P. and D.A. Woolhiser. 2002. Mathematical modeling of watershed hydrology. *J. Hydrol. Eng.* 7:270-292.
- Skaggs, R. and G. Chescheir. 2003. Effects of subsurface drain depth on nitrogen losses from drained lands. *Trans. ASAE* 46:237-244.
- Slaymaker, O. 2003. The sediment budget as conceptual framework and management tool. *Hydrobiologia* 494:71-82.
- Sloan, P.G. and I.D. Moore. 1984. Modeling subsurface stormflow on steeply sloping forested watersheds. *Water Resour. Res.* 20:1815-1822.
- Smakhtin, V. 2001. Low flow hydrology: A review. *Journal of Hydrology* 240:147-186.
- Spitters, C. 1989. Crop growth models: Their usefulness and limitations. *Acta Hort.* 267:349-368.
- Srinivasan, M.S., Gerard-Marchant, P., Veith, T.L., Gburek, W.J., Steenhuis, T.S., 2005. Watershed scale modeling of critical source areas of runoff generation and phosphorus transport. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 41, 361–375.
- Srinivasan, R., T. Ramanarayanan, J. Arnold and S. Bednarz. 1998. Large area hydrologic modeling and assessment PART II: Model Application. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 34:91-101.
- Stöckle, C.O., M. Donatelli and R. Nelson. 2003. CropSyst, a cropping systems simulation model. *Eur. J. Agron.* 18:289-307.
- Summer, W., E. Klaghofer and W. Zhang. 1998. Modelling soil erosion, sediment transport and closely related hydrological processes. IAHS Press, Publication no. 249, Institute of Hydrology, Wallingford, Oxfordshire OX10 8BB, UK
- Takken, I., L. Beuselinck, J. Nachtergaele, G. Govers, J. Poesen and G. Degraer. 1999. Spatial evaluation of a physically-based distributed erosion model(LISEM). *Catena* 37:431-447.

- Tallaksen, L. 1995. A review of baseflow recession analysis. *Journal of Hydrology* 165:349-370.
- Tarboton, D. 2002. *Terrain Analysis using Digital Elevation Models (TauDEM)*. Utah State University, Logan, UT.
- Thomas, M.A., B.A. Engel and I. Chaubey. 2009. Water quality impacts of corn production to meet biofuel demands. *J. Environ. Eng.* 135:1123-1135.
- Thurman, E.M., D.A. Goolsby, M.T. Meyer, M.S. Mills, M.L. Pomes and D.W. Kolpin. 1992. A reconnaissance study of herbicides and their metabolites in surface water of the Midwestern United States using immunoassay and gas chromatography/mass spectrometry. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 26:2440-2447.
- Trimble, S.W. 1999. Decreased rates of alluvial sediment storage in the coon creek basin, wisconsin, 1975-93. *Science* 285:1244.
- U.S. Congress. 2007. "Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007." Washington, DC: Public Law 110-140, 110th Cong., 1st sess., December 19, Title II, Sec. 202. Available at <http://www.govtrack.us/congress/bill.xpd?tab=summary&bill=h110-6>.
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). 2000. The total maximum daily load (TMDL) program. EPA 841-F-00-009. USEPA, office of water (4503F). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- US EPA. 1994. SWRRBWQ Window's interface users guide. US Environmental Protection Agency. Washington, D. C.
- USDA NASS. 2009. USDA national agricultural statistics service: Minnesota county data - crops. Available at [http://www.nass.usda.gov/Statistics\\_by\\_State/Minnesota/index.asp](http://www.nass.usda.gov/Statistics_by_State/Minnesota/index.asp).
- USDA, N.M. 2008. Rapid watershed assessment resource profile Le Sueur (MN) HUC . 7020011. USDA, NRCS MN, Minnesota. Available at [www.mn.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/rwa/Assessments/reports/le\\_sueur.pdf](http://www.mn.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/rwa/Assessments/reports/le_sueur.pdf).

- USDA. 1998. Agricultural chemical usage-1997. Field crops summary. Agricultural statistics, Washington, D. C.
- USDA-ARS. 1992. Root zone water quality model technical documentation version 1.0.
- USDA-NRCS. 2006. Geospatial Data Gateway, URL:  
<http://datagateway.nrcs.usda.gov.html>. Accessed 1 November 2007.
- USEPA, Office of Water, Washington, DC. 1996a. Environmental indicators of water quality in the United States. EPA 841-R-96-002. Office of water, Washington, DC.; USEPA.
- USEPA. 2006. Overview of current total maximum daily load - TMDL - program and regulations. Available at: [Www.epa.gov/owow/tmdl/overviewfs.html](http://www.epa.gov/owow/tmdl/overviewfs.html).
- Vachaud, G. and T. Chen. 2002. Sensitivity of a large-scale hydrologic model to quality of input data obtained at different scales; distributed versus stochastic non-distributed modelling. *Journal of Hydrology* 264:101-112.
- Vaché, K.B., J.M. Eilers and M.V. Santelmann. 2002. Water quality modeling of alternative agricultural scenarios in the U. S. corn belt. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 38:773-788.
- Van Rompaey, A., J. Krasa, T. Dostal and G. Govers. 2003. Modelling sediment supply to rivers and reservoirs in eastern europe during and after the collectivisation period. *Hydrobiologia* 494:169-176.
- Vanoni, V. 1975. Sedimentation engineering, ASCE manuals and reports on engineering practice—No. 54. American Society of Civil Engineers, New York.
- Vertessy, R.A., F.G.R. Watson, J.M. Rahman, S.M. Cuddy, S.P. Seaton, F. Chiew, P.J. Scanlon, F.M. Marston, L. Lymburner and S. Jeannelle. 2001. New software to aid water quality management in the catchments and waterways of the south-east queensland region. p. 611-616.
- Viney, N.R. and M. Sivapalan. 1999. A conceptual model of sediment transport: Application to the avon river basin in western australia. *Hydrol. Proc.* 13: 727-743.

- Vitousek, P.M., J.D. Aber, R.W. Howarth, G.E. Likens, P.A. Matson, D.W. Schindler, W.H. Schlesinger and D.G. Tilman. 1997. Human alteration of the global nitrogen cycle: Sources and consequences. *Ecol. Appl.* 7:737-750.
- Vogel, K.P. 1996. Energy production from forages (or American agriculture-back to the future). *Journal of Soil and Water Conservation-USA-* 51:137-139.
- Wagenet, R. and J. Hutson. 1989. LEACHM, a process-based model of water and solute movement, transformations, plant uptake and chemical reactions in the unsaturated zone. Centre for Environ.Res., Cornell University, Ithaca, NY.
- Wagger, M. and H. Denton. 1992. Crop and tillage rotations: Grain yield, residue cover, and soil water. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 56:1233-1237.
- Wang, X., and A.M. Melesse. 2005. Evaluation of the SWAT model's snowmelt hydrology in a northwestern Minnesota watershed. *Trans. ASAE* 48(4): 1359-1376.
- Wang, X., A. Melesse and W. Yang. 2006. Influences of potential evapotranspiration estimation methods on SWAT's hydrologic simulation in a northwestern minnesota watershed. *Transactions of the ASAE.* 49(6): 1755-1771.
- Water Resources Center. 2007. State of the Minnesota River: Summary of surface water quality, monitoring 2000-2005. Water Resources Center, Minnesota State University, Mankato, MN.
- Waters, T.F. 1980. The streams and rivers of Minnesota. Univ. of Minnesota Pr,
- Watson, F., J. Rahman and S. Seaton. 2001. Deploying environmental software using the tarsier modelling framework. p. 631-637.
- Wauchope, R. 1978. The pesticide content of surface water draining from agricultural fields a review. *J. Environ. Qual.* 7:459-472.
- Wauchope, R.D. 1992. Environmental risk assessment of pesticides: Improving simulation model credibility. *Weed Technol.* 6:753-759.

- Weber, J.B. and C.J. Peter. 1982. Adsorption, bioactivity, and evaluation of soil tests for alachlor, acetochlor, and metolachlor. *Weed Sci.* 30:14-20.
- Western, A.W., R.B. Grayson, G. Bloschl, G.R. Willgoose and T.A. McMahon. 1999. Observed spatial organization of soil moisture and its relation to terrain indices. *Water Resour. Res.* 35:797-810.
- White, K.L. and I. Chaubey. 2005. Sensitivity analysis, calibration, and validations for a multisite and multivariable SWAT model. *J. Am. Water Res. Assoc.* 41:1077-1089.
- White, M.J., D.E. Storm, P.R. Busted, S.H. Stoodley and S.J. Phillips. 2009. Evaluating nonpoint source critical source area contributions at the watershed scale. *J. Environ. Qual.* 38:1654-1663.
- Wilhelm, W., J.M.F. Johnson, D.L. Karlen and D.T. Lightle. 2007. Corn stover to sustain soil organic carbon further constrains biomass supply. *Agron. J.* 99:1665-1667.
- Williams, J. 1969. Flood routing with variable travel time or variable storage coefficients. *Trans. ASAE* 12:100-103.
- Williams, J. 1975. Sediment routing for agricultural watersheds. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 11:965-974.
- Williams, J. 1980. SPNM, A model for predicting sediment, phosphorus, and nitrogen yields from agricultural basins. *J. Am. Water Resour. Assoc.* 16:843-848.
- Williams, J., A. Nicks and J. Arnold. 1985. Simulator for water resources in rural basins. *J. Hydraul. Eng.* 111:970-986.
- Williams, J., C. Jones and P. Dyke. 1984. Modeling approach to determining the relationship between erosion and soil productivity. *Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers* 27:.
- Williams, J., C. Jones and P. Dyke. 1984. The EPIC model and its application. p. 11-121. *In* The EPIC model and its application. Proc. ICRISAT-IBSNAT-SYSS symp. on minimum data sets for agrotechnology transfer, 1984.

- Williams, J., C. Jones and P. Dyke. 1984. The EPIC model and its application. *In* The EPIC model and its application. Proc. of ICRISAT-IBSNAT-SYSS symp. On minimum data sets for agrotechnology transfer, 1984. Hyderabad, India, pp, 111-121.
- Williams, J., J. Arnold, J. Kiniry, P. Gassman and C. Green. 2008. History of model development at Temple, Texas. *Hydrological Sciences Journal* 53(5): 948-960..
- Williams, J.R. 1975. Sediment-yield prediction with universal equation using runoff energy factor. *Present and Prospective Technology for Predicting Sediment Yields and Sources*. 244-252.
- Winter, T.C. 1998. Ground water and surface water: A single resource. USGS Circular 1139.
- Wischmeier, W. and D. Smith. 1965. Predicting rainfall erosion losses from cropland east of the rocky mountains. agricultural handbook, no. 282. US Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC.
- Withers, P.J.A., I.A. Davidson and R.H. Foy. 2000. Prospects for controlling nonpoint phosphorus loss to water: A UK perspective. *J. Environ. Qual.* 29:167-175.
- Woolsey, E. 1992. Switchgrass-back to the future. *In* Switchgrass-back to the future. Energy crops forum, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Spring, 1992.
- Wurbs, R.A. 1998. Dissemination of generalized water resources models in the United States. *Water Int.* 23:190-198.
- Wurbs, R.A., US Army Engineer Institute for Water Resources and A. Texas. 1994. Computer models for water resources planning and management. Army Engineer Inst for Water Resources. Fort Belvoir, VA.
- Young, R.A. 1987. AGNPS, agricultural non-point-source pollution model: A watershed analysis tool. Rep. 35. US Dept. of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service, Conservation Research Report 35.

- Young, R.A. 1987. AGNPS, agricultural non-point-source pollution model: A watershed analysis tool. Rep. 35. US Dept. of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service, Conservation Research Report 35.
- Young, R.A. 1987. AGNPS, agricultural non-point-source pollution model: A watershed analysis tool. USDA-ARS Report 35.
- Young, R.A., C. Onstad, D. Bosch and W. Anderson. 1989. AGNPS: A nonpoint-source pollution model for evaluating agricultural watersheds. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* 44:168-173.
- Young, R.A., C. Onstad, D. Bosch and W. Anderson. 1989. AGNPS: A nonpoint-source pollution model for evaluating agricultural watersheds. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* 44:168-173.
- Zhai, T., R.H. Mohtar and B.A. Engel. 2001. Estimating crop growth parameters for process based models. ASAE Annual International Meeting. Sacramento, California.